ElizabethanDrama.org presents the Annotated Popular Edition of

PERKIN WARBECK

By John Ford

Written c. 1630's?

Earliest Extant Edition: 1634

Featuring complete and easy-to-read annotations.

Annotations and notes © Copyright Peter Lukacs and ElizabethanDrama.org, 2022. This annotated play may be freely copied and distributed.

PERKIN WARBECK

by JOHN FORD

Written: c. 1630's? Earliest Extant Edition: 1634

DRAMATIS PERSONAE.

The English:

Henry VII, King of England.

Lord Dawbney.

Sir William Stanley, Lord Chamberlain.

Earl of Oxford.

Earl of Surrey.

Fox, Bishop of Durham.

Urswick, Chaplain to the king.

Sir Robert Clifford, a rebel.

Lambert Simnel, a sometime pretender.

The Spanish:

Hialas, a Spanish agent.

The Scottish:

James IV, King of Scotland.

Earl of Huntley.

Lady Katherine Gordon, his daughter.

Jane Douglas, Lady Katherine's attendant.

Earl of Crawford.

Countess of Crawford, his wife.

Lord Dalvell, in love with Katherine.

Marchmont, a Herald.

The Rebels:

Perkin Warbeck.

Warbeck's followers:

Stephen Frion, his Secretary.

John A-Water, sometime Mayor of Cork.

Heron, a Mercer.

Sketon, a Tailor.

Astley, a Scrivener.

Sheriff, Constable, Officers, Messenger, Guards, Soldiers, Masquers, and Attendants.

Scene:

Partly in England, partly in Scotland. Time Covered in the Play: 1494-1499

INTRODUCTION TO THE PLAY

John Ford's *Perkin Warbeck* is the greatest historical play of the English Renaissance written by somebody not named Shakespeare. This drama is sweeping in scope, portraying the entire story of the most famous of the pretenders to the throne in Henry VII's time. Though the title character is a fraud, Ford treats him with a surprising degree of respect, even if Warbeck's advisory council is comprised of a great collection of buffoons. Pay especial attention to the refreshingly genial Earl of Huntley, one of the most endearing characters of the 17th century stage.

NOTES ON THE TEXT

The text of this play was originally adapted from the 1888 edition of Ford's plays edited by Havelock Ellis, but was then compared to the original quarto published in 1634. Consequently, much of the original wording and spelling from this earliest printing of the play has been reinstated.

NOTES ON THE ANNOTATIONS

Mention in the annotations of various editors refers to the notes supplied by these scholars for their editions of this play. Their works are cited fully below.

The most commonly cited sources are listed in the footnotes immediately below. The complete list of footnotes appears at the end of this play.

Footnotes in the text correspond as follows:

- 1. Oxford English Dictionary (OED) online.
- 2. Crystal, David and Ben. Shakespeare's Words.

London; New York: Penguin, 2002.

- 3. Ellis, Havelock, ed. *The Best Plays of the Old Dramatists: John Ford*. London: Viztelly & Co., 1888.
- 5. Pickburn, J.P., and Brereton, J. Le Gay, eds. *Perkin Warbeck by John Ford*. Sydney: George Robertson &. Co., 1896.
- 6. Gibson, Colin, ed. *The Selected Plays of John Ford*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. 1986.
- 9. Anderson, Jr., Donald K., ed. *Perkin Warbeck*. Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press, 1965.
- 11. Dyce, Alexander. *The Works of John Ford*, Vol. II. London: Robson and Son, 1869.

Biographical notes are adapted from the following sources:

- 1. James Lardner's *History of the Life and Reign of Richard the Third, to Which is Added the Story of Perkin Warbeck* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1898);
- 2. *Dictionary of National Biography*, edited by Leslie Stephen and Sydney Lee (London: Smith, Elder, and Co., 1885-1900);
- 3. The chronicles of Edward Hall (1548), Thomas Gainsford (1618) and Francis Bacon (1622). Mention of Hall, Gainsford and Bacon refers to the information appearing in these authors' old histories (see Note III below).

Historical, literary and biographical notes which are not strictly necessary to read in order to understand the play, but provide background information of possible interest, are supplied in italics.

NOTES.

I. HISTORICAL BACKGROUND.

A. The War of the Roses and Rise of King Henry VII.

The War of the Roses (1455-1485) was a long, thirty-year war over possession of the throne of England, fought between the descendants of two of Edward III's sons: the Lancastrians, descended from John of Gaunt, and the Yorkists, whose ancestor was John's younger brother Edmund of Langley (we may mention that the Yorkists were also descended from Edward's son Lionel, who was older than both John and Langley, but through Lionel's daughter Philippa of Clarence, which complicates the question of which side had the better claim, since a claim made through a female was less recognized than one made through a male).

Shakespeare's *Richard III* dramatizes the rise of **Richard, the Duke of Gloucester**, to the throne (Richard and his family were Yorkists). After Richard's older brother, **King Edward IV**, died in April 1483, the throne technically passed to Edward's oldest son, a twelve-year-old also named **Edward** (now technically **Edward V**). In Shakespeare's tragedy, Richard one-by-one eliminates all those who are ahead of him in line for the throne, starting with his older brother **George, the Earl of Clarence**, followed by Edward IV's two young sons (famously known as the **young princes**) – the above-mentioned Edward, and his younger brother Richard (styled Duke of York). In July 1483, Richard finally was crowned king himself.

Meanwhile, the leading Lancastrian claimant for the throne, **Henry Tudor, 2nd Earl of Richmond**, had been biding his time in France. Having raised an army, Henry invaded England in 1485, and, in the climactic battle of the war, defeated and killed Richard at the **Battle of Bosworth** (1485). Richmond seized the throne and was crowned **Henry VII**. Henry then married **Elizabeth of York** (Edward IV's daughter), thus uniting the two fractious houses, officially ending the long and bloody war, and commencing England's Tudor Dynasty.

B. Margaret of Burgundy, Our True Villain.

Margaret was the younger sister of **Edward IV**. Born in 1446, she was married in 1468 to **Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy**. After his death in 1477, Margaret ruled Burgundy as a skillful politician.

When Margaret's younger brother **Richard** (ruling now as Richard III) was killed at the Battle of Bosworth in 1485, the duchess became determined to do everything she could to discomfit the new Lancastrian king, **Henry VII**, the man who usurped the crown from the Yorkists. Her schemes included supporting the first important pretender to the throne, **Lambert Simnel**, who acted primarily as a figurehead for disaffected Yorkists looking to take the throne from Henry.

The Simnel revolt failing, Margaret (according to Bacon's *History*) sent out spies to find her a new and improved candidate whom she could support as an even more convincing pretender to the throne of England.

C. Perkin Warbeck's Story So Far, Part I: Youth and Training.

Peter Warbeck (1474-1499) was born in the Belgian city of **Tournai** to one **John Osbeck**, a controller of the city. In his youth, Warbeck spent time in **Antwerp**, **Bergen-op-Zoom** and **Middleburg**. In the late 1480's he lived in both **Portugal** and **Breton** in the service of a pair of knights. Having spent his childhood surrounded by natives of so many different lands, Warbeck picked up a number of languages, including English.

Margaret's agents, having stumbled across this attractive and intelligent young man, recommended him to Margaret, who found in Warbeck the perfect foil to upset, once again, the reign of the generally kindly Henry VII. Her plan: to pass Warbeck off as her nephew Richard, the junior of the young princes, whom she would claim had not been murdered in the Tower after all.

Margaret began to rigorously train Warbeck for his role as the young prince, including a program in which he was taught "princely behaviour...[and] how he should keep state" (Bacon, 116). He was drilled intensely on the story of his life as an English prince, so that, for the rest of his life, he would be able to relate his tale with a conviction and level of detail capable of fooling most any skeptic.

It was time to present Richard, Duke of York, whose life had been miraculously spared, to the world.

D. Perkin Warbeck's Story So Far, Part II: the Rise of the Conspiracy.

Margaret decided to introduce "Richard" to the European public by sending him to Ireland, which had a long history of supporting rebellion in most any form against her rulers in England. Accordingly, Warbeck sailed from Breton to Ireland, landing in Cork in 1491.

In Ireland, Warbeck was actually first acclaimed to be Edward, the son of Richard III's luckless brother Clarence (Edward was still living, though in the Tower of London), and then as the son of King Richard (another Edward, who died in 1484, while Richard was still king), before everyone finally settled on Warbeck's identity as the young prince, Richard, Duke of York.

Warbeck next traveled to France at the invitation of King Charles VIII, who was looking to tweak Henry during a contentious period between the two monarchs (Henry in fact briefly invaded French lands in 1492). Charles entertained Warbeck royally, but quickly evicted the Pretender from his domains once a peace treaty was signed with Henry.

Warbeck returned to Margaret, before travelling to Vienna, where he presented himself to the Holy Roman Empire's Emperor Maximilian, who was Margaret's son-in-law. Meanwhile, the conspiracy began to grow, as Yorkists in England and Flanders joined up in the hopes of reviving their fortunes.

Our story begins in 1494, as Margaret and Warbeck are pondering their next move.

II. Perkin: an English Nickname.

The given name of our pretender was **Peter**, so why was does he come down in history to us as **Perkin**?

The answer can be found in 1622's *The History of Henry the Seventh*, in which author Francis Bacon explains that young Warbeck proved to be a "dainty and effeminate" child, who as a result was "commonly called by the diminutive of his name, **Peter-kin**, or **Perkin**."

III. An Oft-Told Tale.

The story of the Pretender Perkin Warbeck, who caused such havoc in England and brought Henry so many headaches in the last decade of the 15th century, was such a popular one, that it was told in writing in loving detail in no less than four histories published in the 16th and early 17th centuries.

First was **Edward Hall**, who related the tale in his 1548 work, *The Union of the Two Noble and Illustre Families of Lancaster and York*; Hall's chronicle was followed by **William Warner's** *Albion's England* (1586), **Thomas Gainsford's** *The True and Wonderful History of Perkin Warbeck Proclaiming Himself Richard the Fourth* (1618), and finally **Francis Bacon's** *The History of the Reign of King Henry the Seventh* of 1622.

Of these four sources, Ford borrowed most heavily from the later works of Gainsford and Bacon. The next note gives examples of such adaptations.

IV. Ford Borrows Heavily from the Histories.

Readers of Francis Bacon's *The History of the Reign of King Henry the Seventh* might have experienced a sense of *déjà vu* upon hearing (or reading) the opening lines of John Ford's *Perkin Warbeck*, in which King Henry laments, "*Still to be haunted...to be frightened with false apparitions of pageant majesty...Only ordained to lavish sweat and blood...to the ghosts of York.*"

A quick check of page 112 of Bacon's *History* might explain why Henry's anguish sounds so familiar, for here can be found this line: "At this time the king began to be haunted with sprites by the magic...of the Lady Margaret, who raised up the ghost of Richard, Duke of York..."

Of the four published histories which presented detailed accounts of the story of Perkin Warbeck, Ford borrowed most heavily from Gainsford and Bacon, frequently adopting imagery, phrases and vocabulary directly from their pages.

A few examples of such lifting will suffice to make our point (boldfaced words are those appropriated by Ford; all spelling is modernized):

- (1) the very long, very first sentence of Gainsford's *History of Perkin Warbeck* contains this reference to the violent century preceding the events of the play:
 - "...I will insist the less on the...slaughters...which for 90 years filled...our commonwealth of England, with the blood and sweat of ten kings and princes of the race royal; 60 dukes and

earls; 1000 lords and knights; and 150,000 soldiers and people."

Compare this to just the *second* speech of the play, spoken by the Bishop of Durham:

"For ninety years ten English kings and princes, Threescore great dukes and earls, a thousand lords And valiant knights, two hundred fifty thousand Of English subjects have in civil wars Been sacrificed to an uncivil thirst Of discord and ambition."

(2) Gainsford introduces Margaret of Burgundy into his story with this metaphor:

"In the meantime, the fire-brand and fuel of this contention, Lady Margaret, Duchess of Burgundy, had blown the coals to such a heat..."

Ford similarly introduces the duchess in the play's fourth speech, spoken by the Earl of Oxford:

"Margaret of Burgundy
Blows fresh coals of division."

(3) Finally, Bacon tells us that Warbeck wished to relate in private to King James the story of his escape from being murdered along with his supposed older brother Edward:

(quoting Perkin) "For the manner of my escape, it is fit it should pass in silence, or (at least) in a more secret relation: for that it may concern some alive, and the memory of some that are dead."

We may compare this to Perkin's speech in Ford's play, Act II.i:

"As for the manner...of my escape... Great sir, 'tis fit I over-pass in silence; Reserving the relation to the secrecy Of your own princely ear, since it concerns Some great ones living yet, and others dead, Whose issue might be questioned."

Several other dramatic examples of Ford's close adaptation of the language of his sources are provided in the annotations.

V. Textual Inconsistencies and Oddities.

It is a common experience for those who study the original text of an Elizabethan publication to find individual words printed with wildly different spellings and alternate forms throughout the text. Though the 17th century witnessed the gradual standardization of spelling in English, there are still a large number of words in 1634's *Perkin Warbeck* which appear in both their modern and now-obsolete alternate forms.

Examples include (modern form first):

he and 'a; hither and hether; bankrupt and bankrout; spoke and spake; and partake and pertake. Later editors of this play tend to employ the modern version of these words, but since the distinct forms of these words suggest slightly different pronunciations, we print the form which appears in the quarto in each individual instance.

John Ford also had his own individual quirk with respect to second person pronouns: he was very fond of using **ye** for **you**, and used both interchangeably and inconsistently; but in **Perkin Warbeck**, he also frequently used **ee** as an alternate form of **ye**! Again, unlike other editors, we stick closely to whichever form appears in the quarto in each instance.

Finally, we find in the quarto three unusual and unpunctuated contractions, *ith*, *oth* and *toth*: the first is a contraction of *is the*, the second, *of the* and the last, *to the*. Editors typically print these words respectively as *i' th'*, *o' th'*, and *t' th'*. Ford employed these whenever he needed a single-syllable version of *in the*, *of the*, or *to the*.

VI. Scene Breaks, Settings, and Stage Directions.

Perkin Warbeck was originally published in a 1634 quarto. As usual, we lean towards adhering to the wording of this earliest volume as much as possible.

Words or syllables which have been added to the original text to clarify the sense or repair the meter are surrounded by hard brackets []; these additions are often adopted from the suggestions of later editors. A director who wishes to remain truer to the original text may of course choose to omit any of the supplementary wording.

The 1634 quarto divides *Perkin Warbeck* into Acts but not scenes, though the scene breaks are fairly obvious; nor does the quarto signal asides or identify settings. Settings and asides have been adopted from Ellis.³

Finally, as is our normal practice, a good number of the quarto's stage directions have been modified, and others added, usually without comment, to give clarity to the action. Most of these changes are adopted from Ellis.

PERKIN WARBECK

by JOHN FORD

Written: c. 1630's? Earliest Extant Edition: 1634

PROLOGUE

- Studies have, of this nature, been of late
 So out of fashion, so unfollowed, that
 It is become more justice to revive
- 4 The antic follies of the times, then strive
- To countenance wise industry: no want
 Of art doth render wit or lame or scant,
 Or slothful, in the purchase of fresh bays;
- 8 But want of truth in them who give the praise To their self-love, presuming to outdo
- The writer, or (for need) the actors too.
 But such this author's silence best befits.
- Who bids them, be in love with their own wits:
- From him, to clearer judgements, we can say, He shews a history, couched in a play:
- A history of noble mention, known,
 Famous, and true: most noble, 'cause our own:
 Not forged from Italy, from France, from Spain,
- But chronicled at home; as <u>rich in strain</u>
 Of brave attempts as ever fertile rage
- In action could beget to grace the stage.
- We cannot limit scenes, for the whole land Itself appeared too narrow to withstand Competitors for kingdoms: nor is here
- 24 Unnecessary mirth forced, to endear A multitude; on these two rests the fate
- 26 Of worthy expectation: TRUTH and <u>STATE</u>.

The Prologue: note that the Prologue is written in rhyming couplets.

- 1-5: *Studies...industry* = historical plays have grown so *out of fashion*, that companies have found it preferable to re-stage old-fashioned farcical comedies than to support new and serious drama on which playwrights work so hard. *so unfollowed* = few history plays were written after 1613's Henry VIII.⁶
- 5-7: *no want...bays* = it is not that writers lack skill (*want art*), which would render them incapable of writing such plays, nor are there too few authors who are willing, or too many authors who are too lazy, to attempt to win accolades (by writing new history plays).

fresh bays = allusion to the garland of bay leaves bestowed on poets in ancient times.⁹

- 8-10: Ford refers to the lack of integrity amongst those who think they are better than playwrights and actors.
- 11-12: Ford prefers to remain silent on this matter, and is very happy to let those others admire their own cleverness.
- 13-14: Ford presents a history play for those people with perceptive natures.

shews = shows, a common alternate form. *couched* = set down.⁶

- = 'cause our own = ie. because it is an English history.
- 18-20: *as rich...stage* = as noble a lineage (*rich in strain*) of excellent endeavors presented in a passionate performance as has ever been presented on the stage. ^{1,6}

 Note the birthing metaphor with *fertile* and *beget*.
- 23-25: *nor is...multitude* = there is no broad comedy presented here just to please the masses.
- = the following two qualities.
- = (1) matters of state, and (2) dignity.⁶

ACT I.

SCENE I.

Westminster, The Royal Presence-Chamber.

Enter King Henry, <u>supported to the throne</u> by the Bishop of Durham and Sir William Stanley; Earls of Oxford and Surrey, and Lord <u>Dawbney</u>.

A Guard.

Scene I: the royal palace at *Westminster* was the primary residence of English monarchs until it was destroyed by fire in 1512.¹⁸

Entering Characters: *King Henry VII* enters the stage with his closest advisors. Henry had attained the throne of England by defeating and killing the sitting king, Richard III, on 22 August 1485, at the Battle of Bosworth. Unfortunately, Henry's own reign has been a troubled one, as he himself has been regularly vexed by pretenders to the throne. *supported to the throne* = the king is formally guided to

his throne by his escorts who attach themselves to his arms.

Dawbney = the historically correct spelling of Dawbney's name was *Daubeney*, or *Dawbeney*, and in fact this latter

name was *Daubeney*, or *Dawbeney*, and in fact this latter form is the one printed by other editors of this play. Since, however, Ford employed *Dawbney*, which he adopted from Gainsford, to indicate that he intended the noble's name to be pronounced in two syllables, we too use this spelling.

Early Annotations: our notes in the first scene will be redundant with respect to key historical information, so as to help the reader firmly establish in his or her mind the sequence of military and political developments leading into Scene I, as well as the relationships between the numerous members of royalty who figure in the play's backstory.

Henry VII (1457-1509), reigned 1485-1509: despite having been the ultimate victor in the War of the Roses, Henry's decade-long reign so far (1485-1495) has been a troubled one. The long years of bitter Civil War had created resentments on both sides, especially, naturally, for the losing Yorkists. Henry had to deal with repeated rebellions and pretenders in his quarter-century on the throne.

- **1-7 (below):** Henry opens the play by bemoaning the seemingly endless parade of pretenders to the English crown.
- = always, relentlessly.
- = illusory, without substance. = newly-made.
- 4: we = Henry will always refer to himself in the third person, employing the royal "we".

 mockery = imitation or travesty, 1 or subject to ridicule.2
- = ie. crowned for the sole purpose of expending.
- 6: In = ie. as the target of.

ghosts of York = York is Richard, third Duke of York (1411-1460). York served King Henry VI in a number of capacities, including Lord Protector (which made him technically head of England's government) during Henry's occasional bouts of insanity. York's rivalries with other

- 1 **King Hen.** Still to be haunted, still to be pursued,
- 2 Still to be frighted with false apparitions
 Of pageant majesty and new-coined greatness,
- 4 As if we were a mockery king in state,

Only ordained to lavish sweat and blood,

6 <u>In scorn and laughter, to the ghosts of York,</u>

Is all below our merits: yet, my lords,

8

14

16

My friends and counsellors, yet we sit fast

In our own royal birthright; the <u>rent</u> face
And bleeding wounds of England's slaughtered people
Have been by <u>us</u>, <u>as</u> by the best physician,

12 At last both throughly cured and set in safety;

And yet, for all this glorious work of peace, Ourselves is scarce secure.

B. of Dur. The rage of malice Conjures fresh spirits with the spells of York.

For ninety years ten English kings and princes,
Threescore great dukes and earls, a thousand lords
And valiant knights, two hundred fifty thousand
Of English subjects have in civil wars
Been sacrificed to an <u>uncivil</u> thirst
Of discord and ambition: this hot vengeance

factions led gradually to open war, the conflict known today as the **War of the Roses** (1455-1485). Though initially claiming to be only defending himself, his family and his interests, York eventually sought the crown itself, asserting his right to the throne as a descendant of Edward III through Edward's son Edward Langley. York was slain at the Battle of Wakefield (30 December 1450).

York's son, also named Edward, seized the throne as **Edward IV** in 1461, then lost it in 1470 before regaining it permanently in 1471.

Henry's reference to the *ghosts of York* alludes to the pretenders to the crown who appeared during his reign by claiming to be various descendants of Richard, 3rd Duke of York: the first was **Lambert Simnel**, who claimed to be the still-living **Edward**, **Earl of Warwick** (Edward IV's brother Clarence's son); now comes **Perkin Warbeck**, who claims to be Edward IV's son **Richard**, **Duke of York**. Our play begins in 1494, when Warbeck is at large, and seemingly still on the ascendant.

= "what I deserve".

8-9: *yet we...birthright* = ie. "despite all that, I am firmly in possession of my throne, which I own by birthright." Henry may be a bit defensive here, since he himself took power by usurping Richard III.

9-12: *the rent...safety* = Henry compares himself to a doctor who has cured England after the long and bloody civil war.

rent = torn, ie. scratched.
us = ie. the royal "we", again.
as = ie. as if (they had been healed).
throughly = thoroughly, a common alternate form.
set = ie. like a broken bone: a medical term.

14: "I am hardly untroubled."

16-17: Durham revives Henry's opening magic metaphor with *conjures*, *spirits* and *spells*; the *spirits* are the *ghosts of York* of line 6.

18-28 (below): Durham reaches back in time to the civil war and rebellions which erupted after Henry of Bolingbroke seized the crown from Richard II in 1399 (Bolingbroke ruling as Henry IV), lasting through 1408. Bloody civil war further divided England in the form of the three-decade-long War of the Roses (1455-1485), ending only upon our present Henry's ascent to the throne. Given that the Hundred Years' War with France had also engulfed England from 1337 to 1453, Durham's point is that it is only under the current Henry's reign that true peace has finally returned to England.

= barbarous. 1

24 Of the just powers above to utter ruin And desolation had reigned on, but that Mercy did gently sheathe the sword of justice, 26 In lending to this blood-shrunk commonwealth 28 A new soul, new birth, in your sacred person. 30 **Dawb.** Edward the Fourth, after a doubtful fortune, Yielded to nature, leaving to his sons, 32 Edward and Richard, the inheritance Of a most bloody purchase: these young princes, 34 Richard the tyrant, their unnatural uncle, Forced to a violent grave: - so just is Heaven, 36 Him hath your majesty by your own arm, Divinely strengthened, pulled from his boar's sty,

And struck the black usurper to a carcass.

38

- = ie. God or Providence.
- = would have continued indefinitely. = except.
- = weakened or withered, 1.5 ie. from being drained of its
- 26-28: Durham's flattery of course conveniently ignores the strife that has continuously attended Henry's own reign.

30-33 (below): *King Edward IV* (1442-1483) had 10 children, 7 of whom survived to adulthood; only 2 were boys, who were thus regarded as potential heirs to the throne: **Edward** (b. 4 November 1470), and **Richard** (b. 17 August 1473), styled the Duke of York. Edward IV died of perhaps natural causes 9 April 1483. His son Edward briefly reigned in name as Edward V, with the dead king's brother, and the boys' uncle, Richard of Gloucester, acting as Protector. The young king and his brother the Duke of York disappeared sometime in 1483. It is believed by many that the two boys were murdered on the orders of their uncle Richard, who had himself crowned Richard III, King of England, on 6 July 1483.

30: Edward lived a life of variable fortune.⁵ = ie. died.

32: *Edward and Richard* = the two young princes. 32-33: *the inheritance...purchase* = Edward left his boys a throne which he himself had gained violently (*a most bloody purchase*) from his predecessor, Henry VI.⁶

33-35: *these young...grave* = ie. the boys were killed by their uncle, Richard, Duke of Gloucester (soon to be Richard III). Richard, of course, had a motive to have the two young princes killed: he wanted to be king, but the two boys, as Edward IV's children, had a superior claim to the throne. Note that nobody ever refers to Richard as "king" in the course of our play, which would legitimize him.

Note also the typically convoluted structure of this sentence, which, unraveled, would read (condensed), "Richard forced the young princes to their graves." Richard was unnatural (line 34) because he lacked any emotional connection to his own family.

In the 17th century, workmen in the Tower found a set of children's bones, which were widely believed at the time to belong to the two young princes. King Charles II had the bones reburied in Westminster Abbey. The Church of England refuses to allow the remains to be disinterred and examined in order to determine their identities. ¹³

- = ie. Richard III.
- = the *boar* was Richard III's armorial symbol; he is referred to frequently as *the boar* in Shakespeare's *Richard III*.

38: ie. "and killed the wicked (*black*) usurper Richard"; the reference is to the events of 1485, in which Henry Tudor, 2nd Earl of Richmond, invaded England, and defeated and killed Richard III at the Battle of Bosworth, taking the

throne for himself as our play's Henry VII. 39-41: though the Lancaster faction, by virtue of Henry's Nor doth the house of York decay in honours, 40 Though Lancaster doth repossess his right; defeat of Richard III, was the victor in the War of the For Edward's daughter is King Henry's queen, – Roses, the Yorkists, in the end, were able to claim a share of the throne as well, when Henry (a Lancastrian) married Elizabeth of York (a Yorkist), a daughter of Edward IV. 42 A blessèd union, and a lasting blessing For this poor panting island, if some shreds, 43: *panting* = ie. from exhaustion. 44 Some useless remnant of the house of York 43-45: *if some...content* = so long as no remaining member of the extended York clan turns rebel, claiming Grudge not at this content. the throne for himself, or lends his support to some other pretender. Grudge = grumble.^{1,5} 46 Oxf. Margaret of Burgundy 47-48: Unfortunately, *Margaret*, *Duchess of Burgundy* 48 (1446-1503) is fostering rebellion herself. Blows fresh coals of division. $division = dissension.^5$ As a sister to Edward IV and Richard III, Margaret was naturally a supporter of pretenders to the throne against Henry, her existence a persistent thorn in his side. In 1468, Margaret married Charles, Duke of Burgundy, and as a result of her marriage lived the rest of her life in the Netherlands. Widowed in 1477, Margaret was a particular source of aggravation to Henry, as she supported both pretenders, Simnel and Warbeck, against him. Her dissent may have been caused in some part by the fact that Henry, when he came to the throne, had confiscated most of the dowry Edward IV had previously bestowed on her. In 1500, after the Warbeck rebellion had ended, she was forced to apologize to Henry "for her factiousness". She died in 1503. 50 Painted fires. 50-51: nicely continuing Oxford's metaphor, Surrey mini-Without or heat to scorch or light to cherish. mizes the threats to Henry and England from pretenders and their supporters. **Painted** = ie. "these are painted", meaning artificial or false.² or heat = ie. "either heat". 52 **53-60** (below): no matter how often God demonstrates that the Yorkists are not in His good graces, Margaret persists in making trouble for Henry. Dawbney identifies four events which, taken together, prove Heaven is on Henry's side: (1) the death of the Yorkist patriarch is battle; (2) the death of Edward IV; (3) the murder of the young princes; and (4) the overthrow and death of Richard III. 53: *York's* = read this speech as beginning with *Neither* **Dawb.** York's headless trunk, her father; Edward's fate, 54 York's..., with nor appearing in line 56. Her brother, king; the smothering of her nephews **York's headless trunk** = **York** is Margaret's father (**her** *father*), Richard, 3rd Duke of York (and therefore also the father of Edward IV and Richard III). York's army, fighting in the War of the Roses, was destroyed at the Battle of Wakefield (30 December 1460), after which his head was cut off and, with a paper crown placed upon it, displayed at

York.

		53-54: <i>Edward'sking</i> = ie. the fate of Margaret's brother, King Edward IV.
	By tyrant Gloster, brother to her nature;	55: <i>Gloster</i> = ie. Richard III's title before he became king. <i>brother to her nature</i> = ie. Richard and Margaret possess the same refractory character. ⁵
56	Nor Gloster's own confusion, – all decrees	56: <i>confusion</i> = overthrow. ² 56-57: <i>all decreesHeaven</i> = ie. even God is hostile towards the House of York.
	Sacred in Heaven, – can <u>move</u> this woman-monster,	= remove. ¹
58 60	But that she still, from the <u>unbottomed</u> mine Of devilish policies, doth <u>vent</u> the ore Of troubles and sedition.	58-60: note the dramatic mining metaphor. <i>unbottomed</i> = ie. bottomless. <i>vent</i> = discharge. ⁶
		62-72 (below): Oxford mocks Margaret, who, though nearly 50 years of age, seems to be producing new children, and furthermore, that they are born fully-grown: he is of course referring to the pretenders she supports.
62 64	Oxf. In her age – Great sir, observe the wonder – she grows fruitful, Who in her strength of youth was always barren:	64: Margaret produced no natural children of her own.
66	Nor are her births as other mothers' are, At nine or ten months' end; she has been with child Eight, or seven years at least; whose twins being born,—	= ie. Lambert Simnel and Warbeck.
68	A prodigy in nature, – even the youngest	68: <i>A prodigy</i> = an abnormal birth or monstrosity. ^{2,6} <i>the youngest</i> = ie. Warbeck, as the most recent pretender.
70	Is fifteen years of age at his first entrance, As soon as known <u>ith</u> world; tall striplings, strong And able to give battle unto kings,	= ie. "in the", a poetic monosyllabic word.
72	Idols of Yorkish malice.	72: the pretenders are men whom the Yorkists adore and are devoted to, out of their hatred towards Lancastrians.
74	Dawb. And but idols;	74: ie. they are nothing more than false gods such as Oxford describes.
76	A <u>steely hammer</u> crushes 'em to pieces.	= meaning Henry.
	K. Hen. Lambert, the eldest, lords, is in our service,	77-79: Henry not only spared the life of the famous previous pretender, Lambert Simnel, but gave him a job, and in fact raised him later to the position of royal falconer!
78	Preferred by an officious care of duty From the scullery to a falconer – strange example! –	= promoted because he was an eager and dutiful worker. 79: <i>scullery</i> = the department of the royal household in charge of kitchen utensils and plates. **example = precedent.
80	Which shews the difference between noble natures	= ie. shows, a common alternate form; <i>shew</i> is used regularly for <i>show</i> in this play.
82	And the base-born: but for the upstart duke, The new-revived York, Edward's second son,	81-82: <i>but forson</i> = Perkin Warbeck, a new pretender, is on the scene. Warbeck is claiming to be Edward IV's younger son, Richard, the Duke of York.
84	Murdered long since ith Tower, – he lives again, And vows to be <u>your</u> king.	= as king, Henry will properly use <i>thee</i> when addressing the nobles individually, since he is at the top of the social ladder; in return, the nobles will always address Henry with

		the deferential <i>you</i> . Here, however, Henry may be using <i>your</i> in the older plural sense, addressing all of his attending nobles.
86	Stan. The throne is filled, sir.	
88 90	K. Hen. True, Stanley; and the lawful heir sits on it: A guard of angels and the holy prayers Of loyal subjects are a sure defence	
	Against all force and counsel of intrusion. –	91: against all attacks on the crown and secret plots of invasion. ^{5,6}
92	But now, my lords, <u>put case</u> , some of our nobles, Our great ones, should give <u>countenance</u> and courage	= suppose. ¹ = support or good will. ¹
94	To trim Duke Perkin; you will all confess	= prepare, equip, or ornament, but Pickburn reads <i>trim</i> as an adjective, meaning "pretty", and used ironically.
96	Our bounties have unthriftily been scattered Amongst unthankful men.	95-96: Henry is bitter that so many of those he has shown favour to, with offices and titles, have turned against him.
98 100	Dawb. Unthankful beasts, Dogs, villains, traitors!	
102	K. Hen. Dawbney, let the guilty Keep silence; I accuse none, though I know	
104	Foreign attempts against a state and kingdom Are seldom without some great friends at home.	103-4: Henry sensibly expects at least some of his advisors or other high-ranked Englishmen <i>at home</i> are actually working on behalf of his enemies abroad.
106	Stan. Sir, if no other abler reasons else	106-111: "even if <i>duty or allegiance</i> cannot keep these men loyal to you, they should at least be kept in check by
108	Of <u>duty or allegiance</u> could divert A headstrong resolution, yet the dangers	the memory of what happened to those conspirators who supported Lambert Simnel" – many of whom were executed.
110	So lately <u>passed</u> by men of <u>blood</u> and fortunes In Lambert Simnel's <u>party</u> must command More than a fear, a terror to conspiracy.	= experienced. ⁶ = high rank. ⁶ = faction.
		112-5 (below): Stanley lists some of the men who joined the Simnel conspiracy, leading the Yorkist army that was defeated by Henry at the Battle of Stokes Field (16 June 1487), the final major engagement between Yorkists and Lancastrians; Ford adopted the list of conspirators killed at Stokes Field exactly from Gainsford:
112	The high-born Lincoln, son to De la Pole;	112: John De La Pole, Earl of Lincoln (1464?-1487). His mother was Elizabeth, a sister of Richard III. When Richard's only legitimate son died in 1484 at the age of ten, Richard selected his nephew Lincoln to be his heir, over the Earl of Warwick (son of Richard's brother Clarence), who, though having perhaps a superior claim, was still only a boy. Richard was very generous to Lincoln, who fought with him at Bosworth. Although appointed offices by Henry VII, Lincoln remained ambitious for the crown, and fled to Ireland to support the plot in support of the Pretender Lambert Simnel.
	The Earl of Kildare, the Lord Geraldine;	113: the reference is to Thomas Lord Geraldine , who was actually the brother of the eighth Earl of Kildare, Gerald

		Fitzgerald. Thomas died at Stokes Field. Ford has conflated Thomas with his brother the Earl, causing no little confusion for later editors.
114	Francis Lord Lovell; and the German baron	114: Francis Lovell, Viscount (1454-1487?). A supporter of Richard III, Lovell fought at Bosworth. Though Gainsford tells us that Lovell's body was found on the battlefield at Stokes Field, the Viscount actually survived the slaughter and escaped, but then disappeared from history, perhaps dying of starvation while hiding in a vault in his house. In 1708 a skeleton was found in the vault during a renovation, which quickly crumbled to dust at first contact with fresh air.
	Bold Martin Swart, with Broughton and the rest, –	115: Martin Schwartz (d. 1487). Captain of 1500 mercenaries sent by Margaret of Burgundy to support Simnel. Broughton was one Sir Thomas Broughton.
116	Most spectacles of ruin, some of mercy, – Are precedents sufficient to forewarn	116: ie. some of the rebels were executed, some pardoned.
118 120	The present times, or any that live in them, What folly, nay, what madness, 'twere to lift A finger up in all defence but yours,	119-121: a man would have to be crazy to support any cause against Henry, such cause being necessarily fraudulent (<i>im</i> -
120	Which can be but <u>imposturous</u> in a title.	posturous) in nature. 1.5.6 119: 'twere = ie. it would be. 119-120: lift A finger = a variation on the earlier expressions "move a finger" and "stir a finger", the still-current phrase lift a finger seems to have been coined in the early 17th century, appearing in print for the first time in 1617's A Fair Quarrel, a play by Thomas Middleton and William Rowley.
124	<i>K. Hen.</i> Stanley, we know thou lov'st us, and thy heart Is figured on thy tongue; nor think we less	123-4: <i>thy hearttongue</i> = "what you feel is expressed by what you say."
	Of <u>any's</u> here. – How closely we have hunted	= ie. "anybody who is".
126	This cub, since he <u>unlodged</u> , from <u>hole</u> to hole,	126-142: in this speech, Henry reviews Warbeck's travels. Note the nice hunting metaphor of lines 125-6. unlodged = left home. hole = den. 1
	Your knowledge is our chronicle: first Ireland,	127: <i>Your knowledgechronicle</i> = ie. "you all know the story;" <i>chronicle</i> = history. <i>first Ireland</i> = Warbeck had first landed in Cork, Ireland, in 1491, where the conspiracy took shape.
128	The <u>common stage of novelty</u> , presented	= a reference to Ireland as being a location from which pretenders were known to spring: both Lambert Simnel and Warbeck found early support in Ireland.
130	This <u>gewgaw</u> to oppose us; there the Geraldines And Butlers once again stood in support	129: gewgaw = toy or trifle, a thing of no value or account. ¹ 129-131: there thestatue = a detail from Gainsford, who wrote that Warbeck "insinuated with the houses of Geraldines and Butlers" (p. 34). colossic (line 131) = colossal; colossic seems to have been the more commonly-used adjective in the 16th and 17th centuries.

illegitimate son of Sir Thomas Neville, and Sir John Tayl both of whom supported Warbeck in France;? Thomas Neville was frequently referred to in the period's literatur as bastard. They're all retired to Flanders, to the dam That nursed this eager whelp. Margaret of Burgundy. But we will hunt him there too; we will hunt him. Hunt him to death, even in the beldam's closet, Though the archduke were his buckler! Though the archduke were his buckler of the Netherlands." The editors have generally been confused as to whethe Ford's archduke refers to Maximilian I, Holy Roman Emperor, or his son Philip, who ruled the Netherlands 1482-1506. According to the various histories, Henry had sent ambassadors to Philip to ask him to expel Warbeck from Burgundy, where the latter was living under the direct protection of Margaret of Burgundy. Philip's advisors, however, speaking for the archduke (who was still a mine this time), declined to expel the Pretender, politely explaining that they had no jurisdiction over Margaret in own domain — an excuse Henry did not believe. **Bur.** She has styled him** Sur.** She has styled him** She has styled him** She has styled him** "The fair white rose of England."	132 134 136	Of this colossic statue: Charles of France Thence called him into his protection, Dissembled him the lawful heir of England; Yet this was all but French dissimulation, Aiming at peace with us; which being granted On honourable terms on our part, suddenly	131-7: <i>CharlesFrance again</i> = in October 1492 (the same month Christopher Columbus first sighted land in the Western Hemisphere), Warbeck arrived in France at the invitation of Charles VIII of France, who was anticipating war with England (Gainsford tells us that Charles actually intended to place Warbeck at the front of the French army which was to attack Henry). Henry did in fact invade, and besieged Boulogne; Charles, however, made a quick peace with Henry (the Treaty of Étaples), and expelled Warbeck from France. <i>Dissembled him</i> = pretended Warbeck was. ¹
Maugre the malice of the bastard Nevill, Sir Taylor, and a hundred English rebels – 139: Maugre = notwithstanding.¹ 139: How the bastardTaylor = ie. Sir Thomas Nevill illegitimate son of Sir Thomas Neville, and Sir John Tayl both of whom supported Warbeck in France.* Thomas Neville was frequently referred to in the period's literature as bastard. They're all retired to Flanders, to the dam That nursed this eager whelp. Margaret of Burgundy. But we will hunt him there too; we will hunt him. Hunt him to death, even in the beldam's closet. Though the archduke were his buckler! Though the archduke refers to Maximilian I, Holy Roman Emperor, or his son Philip, who ruled the Netherlands 1482-1506. According to the various histories, Henry had sent ambassadors to Philip to ask him to expel Warbeck from Burgundy, where the trew as living under the direct protection of Margaret of Burgundy. Philip's advisors, however, speaking for the archduke (who was still a min this time), declined to expel the Pretender, politely explaining that they had no jurisdiction over Margaret in own domain – an excuse Henry did not believe. **buckler** small, round shield, **hence **protector**, *5** She has styled him The fair white rose of England.**		This smoke of straw was packed from France again,	something incorporeal and insubstantial.
139-140: the bastard Thomas Neville was frequently referred to in the period's literature as bastard. They're all retired to Flanders, to the dam That nursed this eager whelp, Margaret of Burgundy. But we will hunt him there too; we will hunt him. Hunt him to death, even in the beldam's closet, Though the archduke were his buckler! Though the archduke were his buckler the distance of the Netherlands. Though the archduke were his buckler thing, the distance of the Netherlands of the Netherl	138	T' infect some grosser air: and now we learn -	
That nursed this eager whelp, Margaret of Burgundy. But we will hunt him there too; we will hunt him. Hunt him to death, even in the beldam's closet, Though the archduke were his buckler! The editors have generally been confused as to whether of a sarchduke refers to Maximilian I, Holy Roman Emperor, or his son Philip, who ruled the Netherlands 1482-1506. According to the various histories, Henry had sent ambassadors to Philip to ask him to expel Warbeck from Burgundy, where the latter was living under the direct protection of Margaret of Burgundy. Philip's advisors, however, speaking for the archduke (who was still a mind this time), declined to expel the Pretender, politely explaining that they had no jurisdiction over Margaret in own domain – an excuse Henry did not believe. **buckler** = small, round shield, 2 hence "protector".5 **small** = named, called. = ie. Warbeck. The fair white rose of England."	140		139-140: <i>the bastardTaylor</i> = ie. Sir Thomas Neville, illegitimate son of Sir Thomas Neville, and Sir John Taylor, both of whom supported Warbeck in France; Thomas Neville was frequently referred to in the period's literature
Hunt him to death, even in the beldam's closet, Though the archduke were his buckler! Though the archduke were his buckler! Though the archduke were his buckler! 145: "even if he were defended by the archduke Philip, L of the Netherlands." The editors have generally been confused as to whethe Ford's archduke refers to Maximilian I, Holy Roman Emperor, or his son Philip, who ruled the Netherlands 1482-1506. According to the various histories, Henry had sent ambassadors to Philip to ask him to expel Warbeck from Burgundy, where the latter was living under the direct protection of Margaret of Burgundy. Philip's advisors, however, speaking for the archduke (who was still a mind this time), declined to expel the Pretender, politely explaining that they had no jurisdiction over Margaret in own domain – an excuse Henry did not believe. **buckler** s ie. Margaret's; a beldam is an aged wom but the term was also used in a depreciatory sense, to refe a loathsome old hag.¹ 146: "The fair white rose of England." 147: "even if he were defended by the archduke Philip, L of the Netherlands." The deitors have generally been confused as to whether Ford's archduke refers to Maximilian I, Holy Roman Emperor, or his son Philip, who ruled the Netherlands 1482-1506. According to the various histories, Henry had sent ambassadors to Philip to ask him to expel Warbeck from Burgundy, where the latter was living under the direct protection of Margaret of Burgundy. Philip's advisors, however, speaking for the archduke (who was still a mind this time), declined to expel the Pretender, politely explaining that they had no jurisdiction over Margaret in own domain – an excuse Henry did not believe. **buckler** s mall, round shield, 2 hence "protector".5 **superior of Margaret of Burgundy. Philip's advisors, however, speaking for the archduke (who was still a mind this time), declined to expel the Pretender, politely explaining that they had no jurisdiction over Margaret in own domain – an excuse Henry did not believe. **buckler*	142	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	ders, where Margaret received him as her nephew. There they were joined by many disaffected Yorkists. dam = mother (contemptuous), but with whelp (line 142),
of the Netherlands." The editors have generally been confused as to whether Ford's archduke refers to Maximilian I, Holy Roman Emperor, or his son Philip, who ruled the Netherlands 1482-1506. According to the various histories, Henry had sent ambassadors to Philip to ask him to expel Warbeck from Burgundy, where the latter was living under the direct protection of Margaret of Burgundy. Philip's advisors, however, speaking for the archduke (who was still a mind this time), declined to expel the Pretender, politely explaining that they had no jurisdiction over Margaret in own domain – an excuse Henry did not believe. buckler = small, round shield,² hence "protector".5 She has styled him "The fair white rose of England." of the Netherlands." The editors have generally been confused as to whether Ford's archduke refers to Maximilian I, Holy Roman Emperor, or his son Philip, who ruled the Netherlands 1482-1506. According to the various histories, Henry had sent ambassadors to Philip to ask him to expel Warbeck from Burgundy, where the latter was living under the direct protection of Margaret of Burgundy. Philip's advisors, however, speaking for the archduke (who was still a mind this time), declined to expel the Pretender, politely explaining that they had no jurisdiction over Margaret in own domain – an excuse Henry did not believe. buckler = small, round shield,² hence "protector".5	144		
Sur. She has styled him = named, called. = ie. Warbeck. 148 "The fair white rose of England." = named, called. = ie. Warbeck. 148: the white rose was the symbol of the Yorkists in the	146	Though the archduke were his buckler!	The editors have generally been confused as to whether Ford's <i>archduke</i> refers to Maximilian I, Holy Roman Emperor, or his son Philip, who ruled the Netherlands 1482-1506. According to the various histories, Henry had sent ambassadors to Philip to ask him to expel Warbeck from Burgundy, where the latter was living under the direct protection of Margaret of Burgundy. Philip's advisors, however, speaking for the archduke (who was still a minor at this time), declined to expel the Pretender, politely explaining that they had no jurisdiction over Margaret in her own domain – an excuse Henry did not believe.
		_ 	
			War of the Roses; the red was that of the Lancastrians.
		More fit to be a <u>swabber</u> to the Flemish	= sailor charged with cleaning a ship's deck. ¹ = ie. a bout of over-drinking; the <i>Flemish</i> here are conflated with the Dutch, who were stereotyped heavy drinkers.

154	Enter <u>Urswick</u> with a paper.	154: Christopher Urswick (1448-1522). In 1482, the Earl of Richmond's (ie. our Henry's) mother, Margaret Beaufort, took Urswick, a young cleric, to be her chaplain and confessor. Urswick thereafter became part of Henry's scheme to revolt against Richard III, and he accompanied Henry in his invasion of England and victory over Richard at Bosworth (1485). Urswick was rewarded with a steady stream of ecclesiastic positions, which he continued to accumulate throughout his long life. Urswick outlived Henry, dying in 1522 at the ripe old age of 74.
156	<i>Urs.</i> Gracious sovereign, Please you peruse this paper.	Tienry, aying in 1322 at the ripe out age of 74.
158 160	[The King reads.]	
162	B. of Dur. The king's countenance Gathers a sprightly blood.	
164	Dawb. Good news; believe it.	
166	K. Hen. Urswick, thine ear. Th'ast lodged him?	166: <i>thine ear</i> = ie. "listen up." Th'ast lodged him? = "you have given him temporary quarters?" Th'ast = "thou hast".
168	Urs. <u>Strongly safe</u> , sir.	= ie. securely stowed away.
170	<i>K. Hen.</i> Enough: – is Barley come too?	170: by now, the lords realize Henry has something up his sleeve. We will postpone explaining Henry's plan, and the identity of <i>Barley</i> , until Scene III, to preserve some suspense for the reader.
172	Urs. No, my lord.	for the reader.
174 176	<i>K. Hen.</i> No matter – <u>phew</u> ! he's but a running weed, At pleasure to be plucked up by the roots: But more of this <u>anon</u> . – I have bethought me, My lords, for reasons which you shall pertake,	 = the earliest appearance of <i>phew</i> as an interjection was in John Marston's 1604 play, <i>The Malcontent</i>. = in a little while. = ie. partake, a common alternate form.
178	It is our pleasure to remove our court From Westminster to th' Tower: we will lodge	178-9: <i>It is ourTower</i> = Henry has a secret reason to move his court (which includes himself and his immediate retinue) to the <i>Tower of London</i> , which, in addition to serving as a prison, had apartments for the king and his guests.
180	This very night there; — [To Stanley] give, Lord Chamberlain, A present order for 't.	180-1: the <i>Lord Chamberlain</i> was the chief officer of the royal household; William Stanley had held the position since Henry's ascension in 1485. **A present* = an immediate.
182 184	Stan. [Aside] The Tower! – I shall, sir.	183: note that the <i>long dash</i> can be used to indicate a change of addressee, as in line 180 above, or, as here, a switch
186	K. Hen. Come, my true, best, fast friends: these clouds will vanish,The sun will shine at full; the heavens are clearing.	between an aside and a line spoken to another character.
		ı

= a fanfare, usually announcing the entrance, or in this case, the exit, of persons of importance.¹

ACT I, SCENE II.

Edinburgh.

An Apartment in the Earl of Huntley's House.

Enter Earl of Huntley and Lord Dalyell.

Scene II: the scene switches to Scotland; the play will regularly alternate between the English and Scottish characters.

Entering Characters: the Earl of Huntley and Lord Dalyell are Scottish nobles. Huntley is an older man, whose grown daughter Katherine Dalyell hopes to marry. A generous man full of good humour, Huntley is very fond of Dalyell; Dalyell, in contrast, is a deadly serious, but completely honourable, fellow. We join the men in mid-conversation.

Though **Huntley** calls himself "Alexander" later in this play, the Huntley portrayed here is actually **George Gordon**, second Earl of Huntly (d. 1524) (Ford had adopted the erroneous name Alexander from Gainsford's History). On the occasion of the rebellion against James III in 1488, Huntly ostensibly was on the side of the king, but may have been actually helping the king's son, afterwards James IV, as evidenced by his being named to the privy council immediately upon young James' ascension to the crown of Scotland.

Huntly had married James I's daughter Annabella in 1459, but in 1471 the marriage was annulled, as Annabella had been related too closely in blood to Huntly's first wife. Among his children was Lady Katherine, who though portrayed here as the daughter of Annabella, and thus of royal blood, she may actually have been the daughter of Huntly's third and last wife.

Lord Dalyell is, dramatically speaking, a fictional character; he could, however, as Dyce¹¹ points out, be either William or Robert Dalzell, grandsons of Sir John Dalzell; of the former, nothing is known; Robert was killed in a skirmish in 1508.11

= waste.

4-7: ie. "you are so callous (*hard*) in the way you construe

pity for me, this being a matter of love, you instead treat it

There is a brief "printing" metaphor here, as lines 5-6

(conster) my suffering, that when you should be feeling

O, my noble lord,

Daly. You conster my griefs to so hard a sense, That where the text is argument of pity,

Hunt. You trifle time, sir.

6 Matter of earnest love, your gloss corrupts it With too much ill-placed mirth.

> literally mean, "that where the theme (*argument*)¹ of the text is pity, the subject matter being love, your interpretation (gloss) erroneously infuses it".

as if it were a source of humour."

= **Dalyell** should be pronounced as a disyllable: DAL-yell.

= ie. handsome lad.

13: *forward* = eager, enthusiastic.

13-15: dost resolve...posterity = "you are determined to

8

1

2

4

Hunt.

Much mirth, Lord <u>Dalyell</u>?

10 Not so, I vow. Observe me, sprightly gallant. I know thou art a noble lad, a handsome,

12 Descended from an honourable ancestry, Forward and active, dost resolve to wrestle

14 And ruffle in the world by noble actions

	For a <u>brave</u> mention to posterity:	make your mark in the world by performing noble deeds (actions) which you hope history will record for future generations to read about." ruffle = contend. brave = illustrious.5
16	I scorn not thy affection to my daughter,	= note that while Dalyell, in speaking to the elder Huntley, addresses him with the respectful and deferential <i>you</i> , Huntley, in speaking to the younger Dalyell, appropriately uses <i>thee</i> ; but <i>thee</i> also signifies his great affection for the young man.
	Not I, by good Saint Andrew; but this bugbear,	17: <i>Saint Andrew</i> = Scotland's patron saint. Huntley regularly swears by him. but = ie. "but instead I scorn". bugbear = bogeyman. ²
		18-24 (below): Huntley's wife, Annabella, was the daughter of the Scottish King James I; since their daughter Katherine is of royal blood, she would be expected to avoid marrying beneath her social level, as a point of honour. Huntley is saddened by this unwritten rule, as he genuinely would be glad to have her marry the noble, but not royal, Dalyell.
18 20	This whoreson tale of honour, – honour, Dalyell! – So hourly chats and tattles in mine ear The piece of royalty that is stitched-up In my Kate's blood, that 'tis as dangerous	18-23: <i>Honour</i> is personified as continually reminding Huntley of Katherine's descent from royalty, causing him to hesitate in letting Dalyell marry Katherine. **whoreson* = early version of "SOB".
22	For thee, young lord, to perch so near an eaglet As foolish for my gravity to admit it:	= metaphorically, to marry into the royal family. = sense of dignity. ⁵ = allow.
24	I have spoke all at once.	24: "there, I said what had to be said"; Huntley cannot, without harming his reputation and family honour, openly acknowledge his desire to have Dalyell become his son-in-law, due to the discrepancy in rank between his own family and Dalyell's.
26	<i>Daly.</i> Sir, with this truth You mix such wormwood, that you leave no hope	= a plant used in medicine, known for its bitter taste; hence, used to refer to anything that is bitter.
28	For my <u>disordered</u> palate e'er to relish A wholesome taste again: alas, I know, sir,	28-29: <i>For myagain</i> = using an interesting dining metaphor, Dalyell claims he can never be happy again if he cannot wed Katherine. <i>disordered</i> = confused, irregular. ¹
30	What an unequal distance lies between Great Huntley's daughter's birth and Dalyell's fortunes;	
32	She's the king's kinswoman, placed near the crown,	
34	A princess of the blood, and I a subject.	- "don't loove that out "
36	<i>Hunt.</i> Right; but a noble subject; <u>put in that too</u> .	= "don't leave that out."
		37-44 (below): <i>I could addoriginals</i> = Dalyell tries to link himself to the royal family, but, as he admits in lines 42-44, his connection is clearly tenuous at best. Dalyell is descended from one <i>Adam Mure</i> , a knight whose daughter <i>Elizabeth</i> married <i>Robert</i> , High Steward of Scotland; Robert became King Robert II of Scotland in

		1370. Robert and Elizabeth's son, born in 1337, was Robert III , and his son in turn was James I , who reigned 1406-1437. ¹⁷
38	<i>Daly.</i> I could add more; and in the <u>rightest</u> line Derive my pedigree from Adam Mure,	= most direct. ⁵
40	A Scottish knight; whose daughter was the mother To <u>him</u> who first begot the race of Jameses, That sway the sceptre to this very day.	= ie. Robert III of Scotland.
42	But kindreds are not ours when once the date Of many years have swallowed up the memory	42-44: <i>But kindredsoriginals</i> = one's kinship to royalty may as well not exist if no one remembers who one's far-removed connecting ancestor is.
44	Of their originals; <u>so</u> pasture-fields Neighbouring too near the ocean are <u>sooped-up</u> ,	= just as. = swept up, hence "engulfed".
46	And known no more; for stood I in my first And native greatness, if my princely mistress	46-48: <i>for stoodservant</i> = "if my rank were as high now as it once could have been, and still Katherine refused to acknowledge me as her suitor and admirer (<i>servant</i>)."
48	Vouchsafed me not her servant, 'twere as good I were reduced to <u>clownery</u> , to nothing,	48-50: <i>'twereclownery</i> = "I would have been no worse off if my rank were reduced to that of <i>peasant</i> , than if I
50	As to a throne of wonder.	had been advanced to a height of glory" (Pickburn, p. 105). ⁵
52	Hunt. [Aside] Now, by Saint Andrew, A spark of mettle! 'a has a brave fire in him:	53: A spark of mettle = "a spirited fellow", with pun on metal. 'a = he; Ford frequently uses 'a for he throughout the play. a brave = an excellent.
54	I would 'a had my daughter, so I knew't not.	54: Huntley toys with the pleasing idea that Dalyell marry his daughter, so long as it is done without his knowledge. Note how Huntley quickly rejects the notion, then immediately suggests to Dalyell that he elope with Katherine, so long as they leave Scotland!
56	But must not be so, must not. – Well, young lord, This will not do yet: if the girl be headstrong,	
58	And will not <u>hearken</u> to <u>good counsel</u> , steal her, And run away with her; dance <u>galliards</u> , do, And frisk about the world to learn the languages:	= listen. = ie. Huntley's advice not to marry beneath her. = lively dances. ¹
60	'Twill be a thriving trade; you may set up by't.	= begin housekeeping. ¹
62	<i>Daly.</i> With pardon, noble Gordon, this disdain Suits not your daughter's virtue or my constancy.	62-63: Dalyell, like Katherine (as we shall see), has no sense of humour. They are oddly stuffy characters, both emotionally bound up in the pursuit of honourable behavior.
64	Hunt. You're angry. –	= Huntley briefly switches to the more formal <i>you</i> , suggesting a momentary break in the intimate connection with Dalyell.
66	[Aside] Would he would beat me, I deserve it. –	= "I wish he would"; Huntley feels bad for speaking so flippantly about Dalyell's pursuit of Katherine. The elder man is easily one of the most genial and likeable characters in the entire canon.
68	Dalyell, thy hand; w'are friends: follow thy courtship, Take thine own time and speak; if thou prevail'st	67-71: <i>follow thyallowed</i> = if Dalyell can convince Katherine to marry him, even in the face of Huntley's formal, but

70	With passion more than I can with my counsel, She's thine; nay, she is thine: 'tis a fair match,	not too strenuous, opposition, Huntley will be satisfied.
72	Free and allowed. I'll only use my tongue, Without a father's power; use thou thine:	71-72: <i>I'll onlythine</i> = Huntley's plan is that he will discourage Katherine from marrying Dalyell, but he won't force his will on her; it will be up to Dalyell to talk her into marrying him.
74	Self do, self have: no more words; win and wear her. Daly. You bless me: I am now too poor in thanks	73: Huntley, perhaps out of words of advice, concludes his speech with a string of well-worn but rather weak proverbs.
76	To pay the debt I owe you.	
78 80	<i>Hunt.</i> Nay, th'art poor Enough. – [<i>Aside</i>] I love his spirit infinitely. – Look ye, she comes: to her now, to her, to her!	78-79: <i>NayEnough</i> = Huntley notes that Dalyell's poverty is another strike against his candidacy to become his son-in-law.
82	Enter Lady Katherine and Jane.	Entering Characters: we meet <i>Katherine</i> , the subject of the preceding conversation between Huntley and Dalyell. Gibson ⁶ identifies Katherine's attendant, <i>Jane</i> , as Jane Douglas, the daughter of Archibald Douglas, fifth Earl of Angus.
84	<i>Kath.</i> [<i>To Huntley</i>] The king commands your presence, sir.	
86	Hunt. The gallant – This, this lord, this <u>servant</u> , Kate, of yours,	86-88: Huntley so adores Dalyell that he seems barely able to speak coherently. = <i>servant</i> was a complex and subtle word; for a man to let a woman know he is her <i>servant</i> could express his desire to be her follower, devotee, wooer or lover.
88	Desires to be <u>your</u> master.	= Huntley's use of <i>you</i> to address Katherine indicates a formal and ritualistic moment: a father introducing a suitor to his daughter.
90	Kath. I acknowledge him A worthy <u>friend</u> of mine.	= another loaded word: <i>friend</i> could mean well-wisher, suitor, or lover; she may deliberately be ambiguous.
92	Daly. Your humblest <u>creature</u> .	= admirer.
94	<i>Hunt.</i> [Aside] So, so! the game's a-foot; I'm in cold hunting;	95-96: with a brilliant hunting metaphor, Huntley, who thought he was introducing Dalyell to Katherine, is hit with
96	The <u>hare</u> and <u>hounds</u> are <u>parties</u> .	the realization that the young man has already begun to court his daughter! the game's a-foot = the prey is on the move; meaning, the process has already begun. cold hunting = literally, the hunter does not have the scent; meaning that Huntley has been on the wrong track. 96: The hareparties = the hare (Katherine as the pursued, or prey) and hounds (Dalyell as the pursuer, or hunter) are in league (they are parties).
98	Daly. Princely lady,	98-105: note how awkward and stilted Dalyell's wooing is.
100	How most unworthy I am to employ My services in honour of <u>your</u> virtues,	= Dalyell's use of <i>your</i> to address Katherine suggests: (1) his deliberate formality when speaking to her in front of her father; and (2) their relationship has not yet reached a more intimate stage.

102	How hopeless my desires are Your fair opinion, and much Are only matter of despair, u	more your love, -	103-5: Dalyell claims to despair unless Katherine gives him
104	Your goodness give large wa	arrant to my boldness,	some signal of her approval of his courtship. 104: "your generous spirit permits me to be more aggressive."
106	My feeble-winged ambition.		105: Dalyell acknowledges the weakness of his position.
	Hunt. [Aside]	This is scurvy.	107: Huntley is annoyed that Dalyell is not more forceful in his pursuit.
108 110	Kath. My lord, I interrupt yo	ou not.	109: Huntley's comment was an aside, so Katherine would not have heard him; rather, Dalyell has paused awkwardly in his speech, and she is indirectly encouraging him to continue.
112	<i>Hunt.</i> [Aside] Now, on my life, she'll court	Indeed! him. – Nay, nay, on, sir.	= "she will likely be more aggressive than he will!"
114	<i>Daly</i> . Oft have I tuned the <u>le</u>	sson of my sorrows	= ie. music lesson; ⁶ a musical metaphor with <i>tuned</i> and <i>discord</i> .
	To sweeten discord and enrice	ch your pity;	115: sweeten discord = "mitigate our differences". enrich your pity = ie. "augment the mercy you show towards me": pity was often used to describe the sympathy a pursued but unresponsive man or woman should feel for his or her agonized wooer.
116 118 120	But all in vain: here had my And never <u>ris'n</u> again to tell Of the despairing lover, had Even now, the earl your fath	a story not now,	116-8: <i>here hadlover</i> = ie. Dalyell would have given up. = ie. "risen": printed in the quarto as shown to indicate it should be pronounced as a single syllable.
122	Hunt. [Aside]	He means me, sure.	
122	Daly. After some fit dispute	s of your condition,	= "appropriate debate regarding your rank".
124 126	Your highness and my lowned Which did not more embodded My faulting tongue.		124: <i>Your highnesslowness</i> = ie. "the difference in our ranks". 124-6: <i>giv'ntongue</i> = "granted me permission, which gave me courage, if not confidence, to approach you, speaking as poorly as I do."
128	Hunt. How, how	v? how's that? "embolden!"	128f: Huntley is annoyed that Dalyell has revealed his encouragement to Katherine, when it was supposed to be kept secret between them.
	"Encourage!" I "encourage"	ye! <u>d'ee</u> hear, sir? –	129: ie. "What! I said that?!? Do ye (<i>d'ee</i>) hear?" Ford will frequently and indiscriminately use <i>ye</i> for <i>you</i> , and even <i>'ee</i> for <i>ye</i> !
130	A subtle trick, a quaint one:	will you hear, man?	= subtle and quaint are synonyms for "crafty" or "cunning". 1
132	What did I say to you? come	, come, toth point.	= ie. "to the", a monosyllabic contraction.
134	Kath. It shall not need, my l	ord.	= "this is not necessary".
157	Hunt.	Then hear me, Kate. –	135ff: Huntley decides to take over the conversation.

136	Keep you on that hand of her, I on this. –	136: Huntley asks Katherine to stand between him and
120	[To Katherine] Thou stand'st between a father and a suitor,	Dalyell = Huntley switches to the natural and intimate <i>thee</i> that he would normally use with his daughter.
138	Both striving for an interest in thy heart: He courts thee <u>for</u> affection, I for duty;	= out of.
140	He as a <u>servant</u> pleads, but by the privilege Of nature though I might command, my care	140: <i>servant</i> = lover, courter. 140-1: <i>the privilegecommand</i> = ie. the right, as her father, Huntley possesses to make Katherine's decisions for her.
142	Shall only counsel what it shall not force. Thou canst but make one choice; the ties of marriage	
144	Are tenures not at will, but during life.	144: Huntley employs a pair of legal terms for holding property; the real estate metaphor instructs Katherine that marriage is for life, and cannot be broken <i>at will</i> . *tenures = tenure* is the holding or possessing of real property.1
146	Consider whose thou art, and who; a princess, A princess of the royal blood of Scotland, In the full spring of youth and fresh in beauty.	145-166: Huntley's entire speech is wonderfully endearing: by warning Katherine not to marry below her station, he preserves his honour; but he also, multiple times, subtly lets her know that she is free to do as she pleases, thus giving her a chance to fulfill his desire that she marry Dalyell.
148	The king that sits upon the throne is young, And yet unmarried, forward in attempts	148-151: <i>The kingperson</i> = ie. James, the Scottish bachelor king, is, because of his youth, too eager (<i>forward</i>) to
150	On any least occasion to endanger	engage in reckless behaviour which could cost him his life.
152	His person: wherefore, Kate, as I am confident Thou dar'st not wrong thy birth and education	152 4 P. 111
154	By yielding to a <u>common servile rage</u> Of female <u>wantonness</u> , so I am confident	153-4: By yieldingwantonness = by giving in to an outburst (<i>rage</i>) of female foolishness (<i>wantonness</i>), something which is to be expected only of those of lesser rank, or even slaves (hence, <i>common servile</i>).
156	Thou wilt <u>proportion</u> all thy thoughts to <u>side</u> Thy equals, if not equal thy superiors.	= fashion, balance. ¹ = ie. match (in rank). ¹ = ie. "only someone at or above your rank."
158	My Lord of Dalyell, young in years, is old In honours, but nor eminent in titles Or in estate, that may support or add to	158-160: <i>but norfortunes</i> = Dalyell has neither titles nor wealth (<i>estate</i>) enough to give him the success in life which Katherine should expect from a prospective husband.
160	The expectation of thy fortunes. Settle Thy will and reason by a strength of judgment;	160-6: <i>Settlethine own</i> = Huntley hilariously swings rapidly back and forth between his opposing pieces of advice: "marry to your station, but do as you wish"!
162	For, in a word, I give thee freedom; take it.	
164	If <u>equal</u> Fates have not ordained to <u>pitch</u> Thy hopes above my <u>height</u> , let not thy passion Lead thee to shrink mine honour in oblivion:	163-5: "if the just (<i>equal</i>) Fates have not pre-determined to raise your expectations in a husband to one above my rank, (<i>height</i>) do not dishonour me by following your desires." <i>pitch</i> (line 163) = fix or plant. ¹
166	Thou art thine own; I have done.	= ie. "you are authorized to decide things for yourself."
168	Daly. O, y'are all oracle, The living stock and root of truth and wisdom!	168-169: ie. "you speak the truth!" This is not meant to be sarcastic; Dalyell is too serious and honourable to be so.

170		$stock \ and \ root = ie. \ source, fountainhead; an arboreal metaphor: stock = trunk \ of \ a \ tree.^{1}$
172	<i>Kath.</i> My worthiest lord and father, the indulgence Of your sweet <u>composition</u> thus commands The <u>lowest of obedience</u> ; you have granted	171-3: <i>the indulgenceobedience</i> = Huntley's desire to gratify Katherine, a natural feature of his personality, compels her to comply with his every wish. ^{1,5,9} <i>composition</i> = Pickburn notes that <i>composition</i> could mean "words", referring to Huntley's previous speech. <i>lowest of obedience</i> = suggests an image of the deepest of bows or curtsies, as a sign of maximum respect.
174	A liberty so large, that I <u>want</u> skill To choose without direction of <u>example</u> :	= lack. = precedent.
176	From which I daily learn, by how much more You take off from the roughness of a father,	1
178	By so much more I am engaged to <u>tender</u> The duty of a daughter. For <u>respects</u>	= offer. = considerations. ⁶
180	Of birth, degrees of title, and advancement, I <u>nor</u> admire nor <u>slight</u> them; all my studies	= neither. = disdain. ¹
182 184	Shall ever aim at this perfection only, To live and die so, that you may not <u>blush</u> In any course of mine to <u>own</u> me yours.	= ie. <i>blush</i> from having embarrassed her father. = owe.
	<u> </u>	
186 188	<i>Hunt.</i> Kate, Kate, thou grow'st upon my heart like peace, Creating every other hour a jubilee.	186-7: the effect of Huntley's previous speech has been to cause Katherine, in her gratitude, to promise never to do anything to shame him; though in rejecting Huntley's tacit permission to marry Dalyell she goes against what Huntley really wants, he cannot help but be proud of her.
190	<i>Kath.</i> To you, my lord of Dalyell, I address Some few remaining words: the general fame That speaks your merit, even in <u>vulgar tongues</u> ,	 jubilee = occasion for rejoicing.¹ 190-2: the generalclear = ie. Dalyell's fine reputation, spoken about by even the ordinary citizenry (vulgar tongues), confirms his claim to excellence.
192	Proclaims it clear; but in the best, a precedent.	= "but for the highest-rank people (<i>the best</i>), you are an example to follow."
194	<i>Hunt.</i> Good wench, good girl, y' faith!	= lass. = ie. "ye faith", meaning "truly"; an occasionally-appearing alternate form of <i>in faith</i> .
196	<i>Kath.</i> For my part, trust me, I value mine own worth at higher rate	
198	Cause you are pleased to prize it: if the stream	198-200: <i>if thecompliment</i> = "if Dalyell's professed
200	Of your <u>protested</u> service – as you <u>term</u> it – Run in a constancy more than <u>a compliment</u> ,	(protested) dedication to Katherine is unwavering, and not just mere show or ceremony (compliment)". Note the metaphor of stream with run. term = call.
202	It shall be my delight that worthy love Leads you to worthy actions, and these guide ye Richly to wed an honourable name:	201-3: like a maiden in an ancient tale of chivalry, Katherine hopes that Dalyell's love for her will inspire him to commit great and noble deeds, by which he will gain great honour.
204	So every virtuous praise in after-ages	204-5: So everyheir = ie. so that Dalyell will be remembered as a heroic figure in times to come.
206	Shall be your heir, and I in your brave mention Be chronicled the mother of that issue,	205-6: <i>and Iissue</i> = and Katherine will be recalled as the one who inspired him to perform those deeds which will be

200	That glorious issue.	recorded in the history books. mother = ie. motivator. issue = child, ie. outcome: metaphor with mother.
208	<i>Hunt.</i> O, that I were young again! She'd make me court proud danger, and suck spirit From reputation.	209-211: Huntley, elated, wishes he were in Dalyell's shoes: he would do anything for a woman like Katherine! 210-1: <i>suckreputation</i> = draw power and motivation from the fame and honour (<i>reputation</i>) to be gained by serving her.
212	<i>Kath.</i> To the present <u>motion</u>	= proposal.
214	Here's all that I dare answer: when a ripeness	214-7: <i>when atroths</i> = "when I am older or more mature
216	Of more experience, and some use of time, Resolves to <u>treat</u> the freedom of my youth	and experienced, and Fate has decided it is time for me to exchange vows to marry (<i>exchange of troths</i>)". **treat = "bargain away" or "negotiate regarding".6
218	Upon exchange of troths, I shall desire No surer credit of a match with virtue Than such as lives in you: mean time my hopes are	217-9: <i>I shall desirein you</i> = "I will be satisfied if I can marry one whose virtue matches yours."
220	Preserved secure in having you a friend.	= the quarto prints either <i>Prefer'd</i> or <i>Preser'd</i> here – the <i>f</i> and <i>s</i> are often difficult to distinguish in the old font; editors universally interpret this as <i>Preserved</i> .
222	<i>Daly.</i> You are a blessèd lady, and instruct Ambition not to soar a farther flight	222-4: Dalyell accepts Katherine's admonition not to expect any more from her than the ecstasy of being able to speak
224	Than in the perfumed air of your soft voice. –	to her. Dalyell's emotions are mixed and complex: though he loves Katherine, he nonetheless admires the proper attitude she takes to his courtship; he is so serious and earnest that he would likely have been even more disappointed if she had been any more receptive and forward to him than she was.
226	My noble Lord of Huntley, you have lent A full extent of <u>bounty</u> to this <u>parley</u> ; And for it shall command your humblest servant.	225-7: Dalyell expresses gratitude for Huntley's generosity (<i>bounty</i>) in allowing him, Dalyell, to have this intimate conversation (<i>parley</i>) with his daughter.
228 230	<i>Hunt.</i> Enough: we are still friends, and will continue A hearty love. – O, Kate, thou art mine own! – No more: – my Lord of Crawford.	
232	Enter <u>Earl of Crawford</u> .	Entering Character: John Lindsay, sixth Earl of Crawford (d. 1513). Lindsay had an elder brother, Alexander, whom he mortally wounded in a quarrel. John was killed at the Battle of Flodden.
234	<i>Craw.</i> From the king	235-7: Katherine, at line 84 above, had told Huntley of the
236238	I come, my Lord of Huntley, who in council Requires your present aid.	king's desire to see him. One must not keep the sovereign waiting.
240	<i>Hunt.</i> Some weighty business?	= important, serious.
∠ + U		241-5 (below): with hilarious irony, Crawford announces the arrival of a representative of Perkin Warbeck (<i>a Duke of York</i>), who is impersonating Prince Richard, the younger son of <i>Edward IV</i> .
	Craw. A secretary from a Duke of York,	

242	The second son to the late English Concealed, I know not where, the		
244	Craves audience from our master;		= ie. King James.
	The duke himself is following to		= will arrive soon after.
246	<i>Hunt</i> . Duke upon duke; 'tis well, 't	is well; here's bustling	247-8: <i>bustlingmajesty</i> = hustling to gain a crown. ^{1,5}
248	For majesty. – My lord, <u>I will alo</u>	ng with ye.	= "I will go along with you." Note the common grammatical construction of this phrase: in the presence of a verb of
250	Craw. My service, noble lady!		intent ($will$), the verb of action (go) is omitted.
252	Kath.	lease ye walk, sir?	
254	Daly. [Aside]		
256	"Times have their changes; sorrow The sun itself must set as well as		255-6: Dalyell, with sorrow, but also with an honourable willingness to assume the burden, accepts the eclipse
	Then, why not I? – Fair madam, I		of his hope to marry Katherine
258			255: <i>Times have their changes</i> = conditions change with time: proverbial.
			255-6: quotation marks are used throughout the play
			to indicate the citing of some commonplace wisdom.
			255-6: a rhyming couplet is used here, and frequently elsewhere in the play, to mark the end of the scene.
		[Exeunt.]	one of the pray, to make the one of the occur.
	ACT I, SCENE III.		
	London.		
	An Apartment in the Tower.		Scene III: late in Scene I, Henry had made what seemed to be a rather whimsical, and unexplained, decision to move with his retinue to the Tower of London . We now learn that his purpose in doing so was to interview one Robert Clifford, who was being held at the Tower.
	Enter the Bishop of Durho	ım Sir Robert Clifford	Entering Characters: the Bishop of Durham (surnamed
	Enter the Bishop of Durne	and Urswick. <u>Lights</u> .	Fox) and Urswick, whom we met in the play's opening scene, are advisors and loyal followers of King Henry. **Robert Clifford** was a Yorkist who had gone to Flanders to support Warbeck; Henry had sent spies to Flanders, who offered Clifford and William Barlow (the mysterious man mentioned by Henry in Scene I.170 above) pardons if they turned informers. Clifford immediately accepted. Barlow waited two years before submitting to Henry. **Lights** = torches are either brought in or arranged on the stage to indicate that it is nighttime.
			1-7 (below): the bishop reminds Clifford of the great favour Henry is showing him, and trust he is placing in him, by agreeing to meet with him privately.
1	B. of Dur. You find, Sir Robert O	Clifford, how securely	= confidently. ⁹
2	King Henry, our great master, dot	h commit	
	His person to your loyalty; you ta		
4	His bounty and his mercy even in	this,	4: bounty = generosity. even = like most two-syllable words with a medial v ,

		even is usually pronounced as a one-syllable word for
	That at a time of night so late, a place	purposes of meter: <i>e'en</i> .
6	So private as his <u>closet</u> , he is pleased	= private chamber.
8	T' admit you to his favour. Do not falter In your <u>discovery</u> ; but as you covet	7-11: Do notagainst it = Durham advises Clifford to tell Henry everything he knows, without delay, if he wishes to
10	A <u>liberal</u> grace, and pardon for your follies,	receive a pardon from the king for his treachery in supporting the Pretender Warbeck.
10	So labour to <u>deserve it</u> by <u>laying open</u> All plots, all persons that <u>contrive against it</u> .	<pre>discovery = revealing (the conspiracy). liberal = generous.</pre>
		<i>deserve it</i> = usually emended to <i>deserve 't</i> for purposes of meter.
		<i>laying open</i> = disclosing. <i>contrive against it</i> = "plot against the king's person" (Pickburn, p. 105). ⁵
12	77 75 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	10.15 d OCD 1 1 11 11
14	<i>Urs.</i> Remember not the witchcraft or the magic, The charms and incantations, which the sorceress Of Burgundy hath cast upon your reason:	13-15: <i>the sorceress Of Burgundy</i> = Urswick portrays Margaret of Burgundy as a common witch.
16	Sir Robert, be your own friend now, discharge	= common sentiment for "do what is best for yourself".
18	Your conscience freely; all of such as love you Stand <u>sureties</u> for your honesty and truth.	= guarantees.
20	Take heed you do not dally with the king; He's wise as he is gentle.	20: the sense is, "do not mistake appearances: though Henry is mild and merciful, he knows exactly what is going on", ie. he cannot be taken advantage of.
22	Clif. I <u>am</u> miserable, If Henry be not merciful.	= will be.
24	Urs. The king comes.	
26	Enter King Henry.	
28	K. Hen. Clifford!	
30		
32	Clif. [Kneels] Let my weak knees <u>rot</u> on the earth, If I appear as <u>leperous in</u> my treacheries	= early editors emend <i>rot</i> to <i>root</i> . = tainted, hence worthy of being shunned, because of. ¹
34	Before your royal eyes, <u>as to mine own</u> I seem a monster by my breach of <u>truth</u> .	= ie. "as to my own eyes".= loyalty (to the king).
36	<i>K. Hen.</i> Clifford, stand up; for <u>instance</u> of thy safety, I offer thee my hand.	= evidence. ¹
38	Toffer thee my hand.	
40	Clif. A sovereign balm For my bruised soul, I kiss it with a greediness.	
42	[Kisses the King's hand, and rises.]	
44	Sir, you're a just master, but I –	
		46-51 (below): Clifford had previously put on paper, which was submitted to the king ahead of their meeting, the details of the conspiracy, as a precondition to his receiving an audience – and hopefully a pardon! – from Henry.

46	K. Hen.	Tell me,	46: Henry, impatient to get to the heart of the matter, inter-
	Is assaure simply most an an at	how host set down	rupts Clifford. = detail.
48	Is every <u>circumstance</u> t With thine own hand w		- uctaii.
10	Is it a sure intelligence	* *	= accurate information.
50	The progress of our end		
	Without corruption?		= ie. veering from what is true.
52			
	_	rue, as I wish <u>Heaven</u> ,	= ie. to go to Heaven.
54	Or my infected honour	white again.	= corrupted, tainted. = to be free from evil, or morally pure.
56	K. Hen. We know all,	Clifford, fully, since this <u>meteor</u> ,	= comet, ie. Warbeck; the <i>meteor</i> metaphor is developed extensively through line 63.
	This <u>airy</u> apparition firs	st <u>discradled</u>	57: <i>airy</i> = existing in the air; but also referring to an insubstantial person, meaning Warbeck. <i>discradled</i> = emerged from his cradle, a metaphor for Warbeck leaving his home town. This Ford original is a great word, here making its only appearance in the old literature.
58	From <u>Tournay</u> into <u>Por</u>	tugal, and thence	58: <i>Tournay</i> = Warbeck's city of birth, located in Belgium. *Portugal* = Warbeck had spent a year in Portugal in the service of a one-eyed knight named Peter Vacz de Cogna in the 1480's.
	Advanced his fiery blag	zo for adoration	thence = from there.
60	Advanced his fiery blaz Toth superstitious Irish		60: <i>TothIrish</i> = it was in Ireland where Warbeck was first publicly recognized as Richard, Duke of York; the Irish are <i>superstitious</i> because they have an irrational propensity to believe in fraudulent claimants, such as Simnel and Warbeck, to the English crown. <i>Toth</i> = ie. to the. <i>beard</i> = tail.
	Of this wild comet, cor	ijured into France,	= Charles VIII then invited Warbeck to visit as a guest of France, where the king entertained the Pretender royally, primarily as a way to annoy Henry.
62	Sparkled in <u>antic</u> flame	s in Charles his court; thence, and, hid in darkness,	= grotesque or ludicrous. ¹
64	Stole into Flanders <u>flou</u>		= perhaps disparagingly referring to the standard ¹ Warbeck would be waving or flying.
66		e shore of Kent, back with shame and scorn, er of <u>some naked outlaws</u> :	65-67: with a band of followers, Warbeck landed at Kent, from which his small army was driven off. See the italicized note below. Lines 64-65 make no sense together, a line appearing to have been omitted by the early printer: line 164 perhaps was originally followed by a line whose sense was "then made for England, where he made a display, etc." Pickburn, however, suggests an easier fix: emend line 64's <i>into</i> to <i>out of</i> . painted power = counterfeit authority. some naked outlaws = reference to Warbeck's supporters
			of Irish whom Bacon referred to as "a wild naked people" 5

of Irish, whom Bacon referred to as "a wild naked people."5

65-67 (above): on 3 July 1495, Warbeck made his first direct attempt to enter England, arriving with a small army

			travelling on a number of "such ships as his friends (ie. supporters) had provided for him" (Hall, p. 37) off the shore at Deal. He sent some of his men on shore. Unfortunately for Warbeck, the loyal citizens of the region attacked his little band, slaying 150 of his men, and capturing 80 more. From here he sailed to Ireland again (as Clifford mentions in line 70 below), where he fruitlessly besieged the southern port of Waterford for 11 days, his fleet again attacked by loyal citizens. It was from here that Warbeck finally sailed to Scotland to be received by James IV in November 1495.
68	But tell me what new c	ourse now shapes <u>Duke Perkin</u> ?	= Warbeck will repeatedly be referred to sarcastically as
70	Clif. For Ireland, migh		duke by the English.
72	By <u>Stephen Frion</u> , <u>som</u> In the French tongue un But Perkin's tutor now.	nto your sacred excellence,	71-73: <i>Stephen Frion</i> was indeed a former secretary of Henry's, but now, as an agent of Margaret's, serves Warbeck. **sometimes* = former.
74	7/ 17	A 1.1 211.2	
76	K. Hen. That Frion, Frion, – You Knew well the man.	A <u>subtle</u> villain, ou, my Lord of Durham,	= crafty, shrewd. ¹
78	B. of Dur.	ench both in heart and actions.	= typical Elizabethan disparagement of the French as treacherous.
80 82	<i>K. Hen.</i> Some Irish he Speak 'em.	ads work in this mine of treason;	81-82: "there are some Irishmen who are supporting Warbeck: name them."
84	Clif. Not any of t	he best; your fortune	= the highest ranking people. ⁵ = success, good fortune.
	Hath dulled their spleer	ns. Never had <u>counterfeit</u>	85: <i>Hath dulled their spleens</i> = "has subdued any spirit of rebellion that might be festering in their hearts." **spleens** = the **spleen** was believed to be the source of any of various emotions. **counterfeit** = a fraud.
86	Such a confusèd rabble		= bankrupts, a common alternate form.
88	For counsellors: first H Then John a-Water, son	eron, a broken mercer, metimes Mayor of Cork,	= bankrupt dealer in textiles. ¹ = John Water or Walters, mayor of Cork in 1490 and 1494. sometimes = former.
	Sketon a tailor, and a so	crivener	89: <i>Sketon</i> = Ford adopted the spelling of the tailor's name from Gainsford; Gibson, however, notes that all other historical sources print his name as <i>Skelton</i> , and other editors employ this spelling as well; we stick with Ford's choice. <i>scrivener</i> = professional writer or scribe.
90	Called Astley: and wha	te'er these list to treat of,	= ie. "these men want to talk about".
92	Perkin must <u>hearken</u> to Above these dull capac	-	91: <i>hearken</i> = listen. 91-92: <i>cunningcapacities</i> = Frion is more clever than these stupid others.
94	To fly to Scotland to yo And <u>sue</u> for aid to him: Of all their resolutions.	this is the latest	= petition.
96	K. Hen.	Still more Frion!	

98	Pestilent adder, he will hiss-out poison	98-99: <i>Pestilentinfectious</i> = Henry metaphorically worries that Frion will spread the rebellion, hence its being described as <i>infectious</i> .
	As dangerous as infectious: we must <u>match</u> <u>'em</u> . –	99: <i>match</i> = meet with equal power or cunning. ¹ 'em = some editors emend 'em to him.
100	Clifford, thou hast spoke home; we give thee life:	= spoken plainly and truly, ie. he has fulfilled his obligation to Henry.
102	But, Clifford, there are people of our own Remain behind untold; who are they, Clifford?	101-2: <i>there areuntold</i> = ie. Clifford has not yet named any conspirators still living in England.
104	Name those, and we are friends, and will to rest; 'Tis thy last task.	103-4: Henry means that, with the info Clifford has given to Henry so far, he has saved his own life, but no more; if he wants to return to Henry's favour, he will have to reveal the names of the enemy agents operating within England. will to rest = ie. Henry will ask no more of Clifford.
106	Clif. O, sir, here I must break A most unlawful oath to keep a just one.	106-7: Clifford has vowed never to reveal the conspirators in England, which oath conflicts with his promise to tell
108	K. Hen. Well, well, be brief, be brief.	Henry everything he knows.
110	Clif. The first in rank	111-6: Clifford reveals the conspirators who are supporting
112	Shall be John Ratcliffe, Lord Fitzwater, then Sir Simon Mountford and Sir Thomas Thwaites,	Warbeck. According to Bacon, the conspirators were immediately arrested; while some were executed, others were actually pardoned. The clerics all escaped punishment by virtue of their profession. ⁵
114	With William Dawbeney, Chessoner, Astwood,	= not to be confused with Henry's supporter, Lord Giles Dawbney, who is a primary character in our play.
116	Worseley the Dean of Paul's, two other friars, And Robert Ratcliffe.	115: <i>Worseley</i> = ie. William Worsley (1435?-1499). The dean of St. Paul's was actually pardoned in 1495 for his role in the conspiracy. *Paul's* = ie. St. Paul's church, later destroyed in the 1666 Great Fire of London.
118	<i>K. Hen.</i> Churchmen are turned devils. – These are the principal?	118: Henry refers to Worseley and the friars.
120	Clif. One more remains	
122	Unnamed, whom I could willingly forget.	
124	K. Hen. Ha, Clifford! one more?	
126	Clif. Great sir, do not hear him; For when Sir William Stanley, your lord chamberlain,	126-130: Clifford recognizes that in revealing Henry's lord chamberlain <i>William Stanley</i> as leader (<i>chief</i>) of the
128	Shall come into the list, as he is <u>chief</u> ,	traitors working in England, he risks not being believed by the king, who has such faith in his friend.
130	I shall lose credit with ye; yet this lord Last named is first against you.	126-130: Sir William Stanley (b. after 1435-1495). Sir William seemed to have had rebellion in his blood. He supported the Yorkists in 1459, when the Lancastrian Henry VI was on the throne. He was rewarded appropriately by Edward IV upon the latter's ascension to the throne in 1461. However, William was also a friend of Henry of Richmond, and when Richard III usurped the throne William's loyalty

and when Richard III usurped the throne, William's loyalty to the new king was under suspicion. At the Battle of

		Bosworth (1485), William at the last moment brought in his men on the side of Henry, ensuring Henry's victory. Though in the play the unsuspecting Henry is shocked to learn that Stanley is a traitor, the chamberlain's treachery was actually not a huge surprise to the king, who, knowing of the Stanleys' predilection for changing sides, always kept a close eye on him. The extent of William's involvement in the Pretender's plot is not known. The National Biography interestingly points out that the man who informed on William, Sir Robert Clifford, was the uncle of a lord "whose property at Skipton [William] had usurped."
132	<i>K. Hen.</i> Urswick, the light! – View well my face, sirs; is there blood left in it?	132-3: Urswick is asked to bring a torch close to Henry's face.
134	B. of Dur. You alter strangely, sir.	
136 138 140	<i>K. Hen.</i> Alter, lord bishop? Why, Clifford stabbed me, or I dreamed 'a stabbed me. – [<i>To Clifford</i>] <u>Sirrah</u> , it is a custom with the guilty To think they <u>set their own stains oft</u> by laying	= a contemptuous term of address. = ie. "remove the moral taint (ie. deflect guilt) from them-
142	Aspersions on <u>some nobler</u> than themselves; <u>Lies wait on treasons</u> , as I find it here.	selves". = ie. someone greater or of higher rank. = ie. lying usually accompanies treason: Henry accuses Clifford of being untruthful to benefit himself.
144	Thy life again is forfeit; I <u>recall</u> My word of mercy, for I know thou dar'st Repeat the name no more.	= take back.
146148150	Clif. I dare, and once more, Upon my knowledge, name Sir William Stanley Both in his counsel and his <u>purse</u> the chief Assistant to the feign[è]d Duke of York.	= ie. financial support. = ie. to be the.
152	B. of Dur. Most strange!	
154	Urs. Most wicked!	
156	K. Hen. Yet again, once more.	156: Bacon tells us that Henry required Clifford to repeat "over again and again" his accusation of Stanley (p. 132).
158 160	<i>Clif.</i> Sir William Stanley is your secret enemy, And, <u>if time fit</u> , will openly profess it.	= at the right or appropriate time. ¹
162	<i>K. Hen.</i> Sir William Stanley! Who? Sir William Stanley! My chamberlain, my counsellor, the love,	
164	The pleasure of my court, my bosom-friend, The charge and the controlment of my person, The keys and secrets of my treasury,	164: the Lord Chamberlain had a large degree of control over access to the king and his chambers. 164-5: these lines provide another fascinating example of Ford's close borrowing from his sources: Gainsford quotes Henry as speaking of Stanley as possessing "the charge and controlment of all that are next my personand the very keys to our treasury" (p. 52).
166 168	The all of all I am! I am unhappy. Misery of confidence, – let me turn traitor To mine own person, yield my sceptre up To Edward's sister and her bastard duke!	169: ie. to Margaret and Warbeck.

170		
172	B. of Dur. You lose your constant temper.	= steady; a running theme of Renaissance plays was that both rulers and those that affected to be members of the highest ranks of society were expected to suppress urges to act histrionically.
174	K. Hen. Sir William Stanley! – Oh, do not blame me; he, 'twas only he,	
176	Who, having rescued me in Bosworth-field From Richard's bloody sword, snatched from his head	
178	The kingly crown, and placed it first on mine. He never failed me: what have I deserved To lose this good man's heart, or he his own?	177: actually it was William's brother Thomas who placed the crown on Henry's head after the Battle of Bosworth.
180	Urs. The night doth waste; this passion ill becomes ye;	181: waste = ie. waste away. this passionye = Urswick also urges Henry to keep his emotions in check.
182	<u>Provide</u> against your danger.	= prepare.
184	<i>K. Hen.</i> Let it be so. Urswick, command <u>straight</u> Stanley to his chamber; –	185: Urswick is instructed to immediately (<i>straight</i>) order Stanley to go to his assigned room.
186	<u>'Tis well we are ith Tower;</u> – set a guard on him. – Clifford, to bed; you must lodge here to-night;	= Henry wryly comments on the serendipity of their being at the Tower, since he can conveniently have Stanley arrested and confined at the same time, with minimal fuss or uproar. ith = "in the".
188	We'll talk with you to-morrow. – My sad soul Divines strange troubles.	un = m the .
190 192	Dawb. [Within] Ho! the king, the king! I must have entrance.	= from offstage.
194 196	K. Hen. Dawbney's voice; admit him. What new <u>combustions</u> <u>huddle</u> next, to keep Our eyes from rest?	= tumults. ¹ = pile up. ¹
198	Enter Lord Dawbney.	
200	The news?	
		202-7 (below): The Cornish Rebellion of 1497: Ford toys with the timeline of events: in the late Spring of 1497, the Cornish revolted against the harsh taxes Henry had assessed them to pay for war with Scotland. The revolt was led by Michael Joseph, a blacksmith; Thomas Flammock, a lawyer; and one Lord Audley. Ford has this revolt occurring before the Scottish invasion of 1496, which is portrayed later in this play.
202	Dawb. Ten thousand Cornish,	
204	Grudging to pay your <u>subsidies</u> , have gathered <u>A head</u> ; led by a blacksmith and a lawyer, They make for London, and to them is joined	= special tax assessment. = an army.
206	Lord Audley: as they march, their number daily	
208	Increases; they are –	

	K. Hen. Rascals! – talk no more;	
210	Such are not worthy of my thoughts to-night,	
	and if I cannot sleep, I'll wake To bed.	211: some editors move <i>to bed</i> from the end of the line to its beginning.
212	When counsels fail, and there's in man no trust,	212-3: even if Henry can trust no one, God will still lend his
	Even then an arm from <u>Heaven</u> fights for the just.	weight on the side of the righteous. Note how this scene
214		ends, as did Scene I, with a rhyming couplet, which also
		serves to express a sententious bit of wisdom.
		Heaven is usually pronounced as a one-syllable word for
		purposes of meter: <i>Hea'n</i> .
	[Exeunt.]	
	END OF ACT I.	

	ACT II.	
	SCENE I.	
	Edinburgh. The Presence-chamber in the Palace.	
	Enter above the Countess of Crawford, Lady Katherine, Jane, and other Ladies.	Entering Characters: a group of noble women enter the gallery, or balcony, at the back of the stage. We met <i>Katherine</i> , the serious daughter of the Earl of Huntley, when she was being courted by Lord Dalyell back in Act I.ii. <i>Jane</i> is Katherine's attendant. We previously met the <i>Countess of Crawford's</i> husband, the Earl of Crawford, also in Act I.ii: it was he who came to call Huntley to the king's presence to witness the arrival of Warbeck.
		1-21 (below): the conversation of the women suggests that while they are tentatively willing to believe that the expected visitor is the actual Duke of York, they also have their doubts.
1 2	<i>Countess of C.</i> Come, ladies, here's a solemn preparation For <u>entertainment</u> of this <u>English prince</u> ;	= welcome or reception. ^{1,6} = ie. Perkin Warbeck.
4	The king intends <u>grace</u> more than ordinary: 'Twere pity now if he should prove a counterfeit.	= ie. "(to bestow) favour". ⁵
6	<i>Kath.</i> Bless the young man, our nation would be laughed at	
8	For honest souls through Christendom! My father Hath a weak stomach to the business, madam, But that the king must not be crossed.	= innocent or naïve. ¹ 8-9: Huntley is against the whole Warbeck business, but he keeps his mouth shut so as not to anger James. **crossed* = opposed. ¹
10	Countess of C. 'A brings	11-18: the countess mocks Warbeck's followers for their
12	A goodly troop, they say, of gallants with him; But very modest people, for they strive not	having, out of modesty, "hidden" their noble standing by taking up trades and living as commoners. Her whole speech is humorously ironic.
14	To fame their names too much; their godfathers	= make famous.
	May be beholding to them, but their fathers	15-16: <i>their fathersthanks</i> = assuming the advisors were genuine nobility, they would naturally disappoint their fathers in concealing their high ranks.
16	Scarce owe them thanks: they are <u>disguisèd princes</u> ,	= a stinging barb!
18	Brought up, it seems, to honest trades; no matter, They will break forth in season.	18: they will reveal their true noble identities at the appropriate time.
20	Jane. Or break out;	= an unclear expression, which gives us a good example of how different editors can give diverse glosses to a bit of text: Pickburn interprets <i>break out</i> to mean "become desperate"; Anderson suggests "escape from prison"; and Gibson writes, "erupt (as a boil might), (2) escape from prison" (page 252).
	For most of 'em are <u>broken</u> by report. –	= bankrupt, continuing the play on words with <i>break</i> .

22	[A (I : 1]	
24	[A flourish.]	
26	The king!	
28	<i>Kath.</i> Let us observe 'em and be silent.	
30	Enter King James, Earls of Huntley and Crawford, Lord Dalyell, and other Noblemen.	Entering Characters: we finally meet <i>King James IV</i> of Scotland. <i>Huntley</i> is the father of Katherine, <i>Lord Dalyell</i> her disappointed suitor, both of whom we met in Act I.ii.
		King James IV (1473-1513), reigned 1488-1513. As a teenager, James was made the figurehead of a rebellious group of nobles who assassinated James' father, King James III, in 1488. Reportedly, James regretted his part in causing his father's death, and supposedly wore an iron belt outside his doublet in self-imposed penance. James has always been considered one of Scotland's strongest kings, systemizing the administration of justice, building up the military, and preserving good relations with most of Europe.
32	<i>K. Ja.</i> The right of kings, my lords, extends not only To the safe <u>conservation</u> of <u>their own</u> ,	= preservation. = ie. their own crowns.
34	But also to the aid of such <u>allíes</u>	34-37: kings also have an obligation to help other sovereigns
36	As change of time and state hath oftentimes Hurled down from careful crowns to undergo An exercise of sufferance in both fortunes:	(allies) retrieve their crowns when they have lost them through misfortune. allies = stressed on its second syllable. Hurled down = ie. dethroned. careful = full of care or anxiety. 36-37: to undergofortunes = to endure both good and bad fortune. 1.6
38	So English Richard, surnamed Coeur-de-Lion,	38-42: So Englishtheir own = James offers a pair of
40	So <u>Robert Bruce</u> , our royal ancestor, Forced by the trial of the wrongs they felt, Both sought and found <u>supplies</u> from foreign kings,	historical examples to support his theory that monarchs should help each other hang onto their thrones. supplies = Gibson suggests "reinforcements".
42	To repossess their own. Then grudge not, lords,	English Richard = Richard I, nicknamed the Lionheart, or, in French, Coeur-de-Lion (1157-1199), reigned England
		1189-1199. In the 1180's, Richard, not yet king, sought the help of
		France's young King Philip II (known also as Philip Augustus) in defending the duchy of Aquitaine (which
		Richard had been ruling independently since 1172) against the expected attacks of Richard's father Henry II , who
		wanted his son to renounce his hold on Aquitaine in favour of Richard's younger brother John – after all, Richard's
		older brother Henry had just died, leaving Richard heir to the throne of England. Richard went so far as to do homage
		to the French sovereign for all the other English-held lands on the continent.
		Robert Bruce = Robert the Bruce (1274-1329), reigned Scotland 1306-1329. Robert had been given refuge by
		England's Edward I in 1295, when the Bruces had decided their claim to the Scottish throne was superior to that of the current king, John Balliol .
44	A much distressèd prince: King Charles of France And Maximilian of Bohemia both	= the Holy Roman Emperor.

46 48	Have ratified his credit by their letters; Shall we, then, be distrustful? No; compassion Is one rich jewël that shines in our crown, And we will have it shine there.	45: Charles and Maximilian have written to James, confirming their belief that Warbeck really is the young prince.
50	<i>Hunt.</i> Do your will, sir.	
52	K. Ja. The young duke is at hand: Dalyell, from us First greet him, and conduct him on; then Crawford	
54	Shall meet him next; and Huntley, last of all, Present him to our arms. –	= ie. "into my arms", for an embrace.
56	[Exit Lord Dalyell.]	
58 60	Sound sprightly music, Whilst majesty encounters majesty.	
62	[<u>Hautboys</u> play.]	= ancient reed instruments, similar to clarinets or oboes; the music plays throughout the ceremonial welcome.
64 66	Re-enter Lord Dalyell with Perkin Warbeck, followed at a distance by Frion, Heron, Sketon, Astley, and John A-Water. The Earl of Crawford advances and	65-66: <i>FrionA-Water</i> = these are Warbeck's advisors, the men the Countess of Crawford was making fun of earlier in the scene.
68	entertains Perkin at the door; the Earl of Huntley next salutes him and presents him to the King: they	= salutes, welcomes.
70	embrace; the Noblemen <u>slightly salute his Followers</u> .	= bow indifferently to Warbeck's advisors.
72	<i>Warb.</i> Most high, most mighty king! that now there stands Before your eyes, in presence of your peers, A subject of the rarest kind of pity	71<i>ff</i>: Warbeck's speaking manner throughout the play is so high-styled as to be almost self-parodying.73: Warbeck describes himself as a man worthy of the greatest degree of sympathy.
74	That hath in any age touched noble hearts, The <u>vulgar</u> story of a prince's ruin	= well-known, familiar. ¹
76	Hath made it too apparent: Europe knows, And all the western world, what persecution	
78	Hath raged in malice against <u>us</u> , sole heir	= ie. "me"; Warbeck uses the "royal we".
	To the great throne of old <u>Plantagenets</u> .	= the name of the family that held the English crown from 1154 until Richard III's death in 1485; the new king, our Henry VII, was the first of the Tudor line.
80	How from our nursery we have been hurried Unto the sanctuary, from the sanctuary	80-110: Warbeck relates his "official" story. Ford borrows lines 80-83 closely from Bacon, who quoted Warbeck as
82	Forced to the prison, from the prison haled By cruël hands to the tormentor's fury,	describing himself as one "who hath been carried from the nursery to the sanctuary; from the sanctuary, to the direful prison; from the prison, to the hand of the cruel tormentor" (p. 148).
84	Is registered already in the volume	84-85: <i>Is registeredtongues</i> = every man knows, and is talking about, Warbeck's story.
86	Of all men's tongues; whose true <u>relation</u> draws Compassion, melted into weeping eyes	= telling (of the <i>story</i> of line 75); with <i>volume</i> , a "book" metaphor.
88	And bleeding souls: but our misfortunes since Have <u>ranged a larger progress</u> through <u>strange</u> lands, Protected in our innocence by Heaven.	= wandered widely, ie. "taken Warbeck". = foreign.
90	Edward the Fifth, our brother, in his tragedy	90-99: as the young Duke of York, Warbeck was spared

92	Quenched their hot thirst of blood, whose hire to <u>murther</u> Paid them their wages of despair and horror;	being murdered like his "brother", King Edward V, the older of the young princes, thanks to the compassion of the killers. *murther* = common alternate form for *murder*.
		93-126 (below): Pickford notes that Warbeck abandons the royal "we", speaking in the first person, while he relates his personal story.
94	The softness of my childhood smiled upon The roughness of their task, and robbed them farther Of hearts to dare, or hands to execute.	93-95: the murderers could not bring themselves to slay a second prince, touched as they were by his youth and innocence.
96	Great king, they spared my life, the butchers spared it; Returned the <u>tyrant</u> , my <u>unnatural uncle</u> ,	97-98: <i>Returneddispatch</i> = the killers returned to Richard (the <i>tyrant</i> and the boys' <i>uncle</i>) and told him that they had indeed killed the young duke, along with his brother. <i>unnatural</i> = lacking normal familial feelings. <i>dispatch</i> (line 98) = violent death.
98 100	A truth of my dispatch: I was conveyed With secrecy and speed to <u>Tournay</u> ; fostered By obscure means, taught to <u>unlearn myself</u> :	98-100: <i>I wasmyself</i> = to explain away his known upbringing in <i>Tournai</i> , Warbeck describes how he was secreted away to that city by supporters, to be raised by a common family, and to forget who he was (<i>unlearn myself</i>).
102 104	But as I grew in years, I grew in sense Of fear and of disdain; fear of the tyrant Whose power swayed the throne then: when disdain Of living so unknown, in such a servile	101-4: <i>But asunknown</i> = Bacon, whom Ford closely follows for this passage, makes it clear that the <i>tyrant</i> is Richard whom Warbeck fears will send agents to assassinate him; after Henry usurped the throne in 1585 (only two years after the death Edward the young prince in 1583), Warbeck then had to worry that Henry too might seek his " <i>final destruction</i> " (p. 150-1). Note how Ford actually confuses the identity of <i>the tyrant</i> , since the clause <i>But as I grew in years</i> (line 101) covers more years than just the two from 1583-5.
106	And abject lowness, prompted me to thoughts Of recollecting who I was, I shook off My bondage, and made haste to let my aunt	
108 110	Of Burgundy acknowledge me her kinsman, Heir to the crown of England, snatched by Henry From Richard's head; a thing scarce known ith world.	= note that Warbeck never refers to or acknowledges either Henry or Richard as "king". = "in the".
112	K. Ja. My lord, it stands not with your counsel now	112-3: <i>it standsinvectives</i> = James admonishes Warbeck to speak with moderation, as all members of royalty should. We have seen Henry be accused of intemperate speech earlier in the play as well. <i>it standsnow</i> = "it is inconsistent with your purpose" (Gibson, p. 255).6
114 116	To fly upon invectives: if you can Make this apparent what you have discoursed In every <u>circumstance</u> , we will not study An answer, but are ready in your cause.	113-6: <i>if youyour cause</i> = "if you can prove your story by describing every detail (<i>circumstance</i>), I will not waste time deciding how to respond: I am already prepared to help you." 115-6: <i>study an answer</i> = ponder how best to respond.
118	<i>Warb.</i> You are a wise and just king, by the powers Above reserved, beyond all other aids,	118-120: Providence has pegged James, more than anyone else, to be the one to help Warbeck to the throne of

120	To plant me in mine own inheritance,	England.
122	To marry these two kingdoms in a love Never to be divorced while time is time.	121-2: while Warbeck means they will be united as allies, Ford may have also been flatteringly alluding to the actual unification of England and Scotland when Scotland's James VI ascended England's throne as James I in 1603. while time is time = ie. for all eternity.
124	As for the manner, first of my escape, Of my conveyance next, of my life since, The means and persons who were <u>instruments</u> ,	= agents, ie. those who assisted him.
126	Great sir, 'tis fit I over-pass in silence;	126-130: 'tis fitquestioned = Warbeck will relate the
128	Reserving the relation to the secrecy Of your own princely ear, since it concerns	details of his story to James privately, so as not to compromise those who have helped him along the way.
130	Some great ones living yet, and others dead, Whose <u>issue</u> might be questioned. <u>For your bounty</u> ,	130: <i>issue</i> = children, descendants; Warbeck does not want everyone to hear the names of those who helped him, as Henry might become suspicious of the loyalties of their families. *For your bounty* = "as for your generosity".
	Royal magnificence to him that seeks it,	131: a bit of flattery: James is always willing to assist those who ask him for help. **magnificence* = generosity.1,6
132	We vow hereafter to <u>demean ourself</u> As if we were your own and natural brother,	= ie. act, behave himself.
134	Omitting no occasion in our person	with out and along
136	T' express a gratitude <u>beyond example</u> .	= without precedent.
138	K. Ja. He must be more than subject who can utter The language of a king, and such is thine. Take this for answer: be what'er thou art,	= ie. Warbeck. = more than a mere commoner.
140	Thou never shalt repent that thou hast put	
142	Thy cause and person into my protection. <u>Cousin of York</u> , thus once more we embrace thee;	= cousin was a common vocative used between royals.
144	Welcome to James of Scotland! for thy safety, Know, such as love thee not shall never wrong thee.	144: James guarantees Warbeck's safety during his residence
146	Come, we will taste a while our court-delights, Dream hence affliction past, and then proceed	in Scotland from those who would be his enemies.
	To high attempts of honour. On, lead on! –	= James looks forward to the martial challenge inherent in installing Warbeck on his throne.
148	Both thou and thine are ours, and we will guard ye. – Lead on!	= "you and all your dependents will be my responsibility".
150	[Exeunt all but the Ladies above.]	
152	_	
154	Countess of C. I have not seen a gentleman Of a more <u>brave aspéct</u> or <u>goodlier carriage</u> ;	154: <i>brave aspect</i> = excellent countenance; <i>aspect</i> is stressed on its second syllable. <i>goodlier carriage</i> = more dignified bearing.
156	His fortunes move not him. – [To Katherine] Madam, you're passionate.	155: <i>His fortunes move not him</i> = "he handles his bad luck with great equanimity." **Madam, you're passionate* = the countess notices that Katherine seems agitated; Dyce suggests she is weeping.
156		l l

	<i>Kath.</i> Beshrew me, but his words have touched me home,	157-9: Katherine's sympathy for Warbeck foreshadows some interesting future developments. **Beshrew me** = hang it all!** *home** = deeply.6*
158	As if his cause concerned me: I should pity him, If he should prove another than he seems.	159: euphemistically, "if he should prove a fraud."
160	Re-enter Earl of Crawford.	
162		
164	<i>Craw.</i> Ladies, the king commands your presence instantly For entertainment of the duke.	
166	Kath. The duke	
168	Must, then, be entertained, the king obeyed; It is our duty.	
170	Countess of C. We will all wait on him.	
172	[Exeunt.]	
	ACT II, SCENE II.	
	London.	
	The Tower.	Scene II: faced with accusations of treason, Stanley has confessed to his crime.
	A flourish.	
	Enter King Henry, the Earls of Oxford and Surrey, and the Bishop of Durham.	
1 2	K. Hen. Have ye <u>condemned</u> my chamberlain?	= convicted; Stanley was found guilty of treason on 6 February 1495, in a trial of his peers.
4	B. of Dur. His treasons Condemned him, sir; which were as clear and manifest	
	As foul and dangerous: besides, the guilt	5-6: <i>the guiltnearly</i> = ie. "Stanley's guilt weighed so
6	Of his conspiracy pressed him so <u>nearly</u> ,	heavily upon him". nearly = closely.9
8	That it drew from him free confession Without an importunity.	= repeated entreaty.
10	K. Hen. O, Lord Bishop,	
12	This argued shame and sorrow for his folly, And must not stand in evidence against	= ie. "Stanley's voluntary confession is evidence of (his)".
14	Our mercy and the softness of our nature: The rigour and extremity of law	
16	Is sometimes too-too bitter; but we carry A chancery of pity in our bosom.	= ie. reference to England's highest court after the House
10	11 chancery of pity in our bosom.	of Lords. ¹
18	I hope we may reprieve him from the sentence Of death; I hope we may.	17-18: Henry interestingly refers to himself in the first person here, as a signal that his feelings are intended to be understood as personal, and not official. The clause, " <i>I hope we may</i> ", which he says twice, fascinatingly distinguishes between the two perspectives: "I personally wish that I, as king, could save Stanley."

20-30 (below): in this dangerously sarcastic speech. Durham argues that if Henry Tails to sentence Stanley to death for committing treason, it must be because Henry believes, as does Stanley, that Warbeck, as a "Yorkist", has a superior claim to his throne, and that all the nobles present are by necessity traitors for swearing loyalty to Henry! 20 B. of Dur. You may, you may; And so persuade your subjects that the title OI York is better, nay, more just and lawful, Than yours of Lancaster's os Stanley holds: 22 Which if it be not treason in the highest. Then we are traitors all, perjured and false, Who have took oath to Henry and the justice Of Henry's title; Oxford, Surey, Dawhney, With all your other person of state and church, Forsworn, and Stanley ince along to Heaven 30 And England's lawful heir! 30 Eagland's lawful heir! 31 And England's lawful heir! 32 Oxf. By Vere's old honours, I'll cut this throat dares speak it. 33 Size. Tis a quarrel 34 Stanley was once my friend, and came in time 35 T' engage a soul in. 36 K. Hen. What a coil is here 37 To keep my gratitude sincerg and perfect! 38 K. Hen. What a coil is here 39 To engage a soul in. 30 To save my life; – yet, to say truth, my lords, The man staved long enough t'endanger it: — 30 To save my life; – yet, to say truth, my lords, The man staved long enough t'endanger it: — 39 But I could see no more into his heart 40 As that there wanted him so fully, 40 As that there wanted him so fully, 41 As that there wanted him so fully, 42 As that there wanted him so fully, 43 As that there wanted nothing in our gift			
And so persuade your subjects that the title Of York is better, nay, more just and lawful, Than yours of Lancaster! so Stanley holds: Which if it be not treason in the highest, Then we are traitors all, perjured and false, Who have took oath to Henry and the justice Of Henry's title; Oxford, Surrey, Dawbney, With all your other peers of state and church, Forsworn, and Stanley true alone to Heaven And England's lawful heir! 20-30. Bishop of Durham, Richard Foxe (c. 1448-1528), While a young litinerant scholar and priest living in France, Foxe was befriended by Henry of Richmond, who was in France hinself at the time, plotting heellion against Richard III. After Henry's convation (1483), Foxe remained a close and trusted advisor to the king for the remainder of Henry's life, being appointed Bishop of Durham in 1941, Foxe lived a long life, serving Henry VIII as well after Henry VII's death in 1308. Foxe may be most lead in 1517. 32. Were was the family name of the Earl of Oxford. 33. Were was the family name of the Earl of Oxford. 34. Hen. What a coil is here To keep my gratitude sincere and perfect! 45. Stanley was once my friend, and came in time 46. And I cande acmemy life = at the Battle of Bosworth, William Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armies, watching the forces of Henry and Richard flight it at a key moment, Thomas sent William and his 3000 troops in on Henry's side, tipping the outcome in his favour. 47. To save my life; — yet, to say truth, my lords, The man stayed long enough t' endanger it — 48. But I could see no more into his heart Than what his outward actions did present; And for 'em have rewarded him so fully, 49. The man stayed long enough t' endanger it — 40. Aut and camemy life = at the Battle of Bosworth, William Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armies, watching the forces of Henry and Richard flight. At a key moment Thomas sent William and his 3000 troops in on Henry's			argues that if Henry fails to sentence Stanley to death for committing treason, it must be because Henry believes, as does Stanley, that Warbeck, as a "Yorkist", has a superior claim to his throne, and that all the nobles present are by
Of York is better, nay, more just and lawful, Than yours of Lancaster! so Stanley holds: Which if it be not treason in the highest. Then we are traitors all, perjured and false, Who have took oath to Henry and the justice Of Henry's title; Oxford, Surrey, Dawbney, With all your other peers of state and church, Forsworn, and Stanley true alone to Heaven And England's lawful heir! 20 30: Bithop of Durham, Richard Foxe (c. 1448-1528), While ay young timeraut scholar and priest living in France, Foxe was befriended by Henry's title; Oxforned, was in France himself at the time, plotting his rebellion against Richard III. After Henry's coronation (1485), Foxe remained a close and trusted advisor to the king for the remainder of Henry's life, being appointed Bishop of Durham in 1494. Foxe lived a long life, serving Henry WII os well alget Henry VII's death in 1509, Foxe may be most well-known today for founding Corpus Christi College at Oxford in 1517. 32 Oxf. By Vere's old honours, I'll cut his throat dares speak it. 34 Sur. Tis a quarrel Tengage a soul in. 35 K. Hen. What a coil is here To keep my gratitude sincere and perfect! 40 Stanley was once my friend, and came in time 41 To save my life; – yet, to say truth, my lords, The man staved long enough t' endanger it: – To save my life; – yet, to say truth, my lords, The man staved long enough t' endanger it: – To save my life; – yet, to say truth, my lords, The man staved long enough t' endanger it: – But I could see no more into his heart Than what his outward actions did present; And for 'em have rewarded him so fully, 5 the quarto prints 'em here, emended universally as shown.	20	B. of Dur. You may, you may;	
Which if it be not treason in the highest. Then we are traitors all, perjured and false, Who have took oath to Henry and the justice Of Henry's title; Oxford, Surrey, Dawbney, With all your other peers of state and church, Forsworn, and Stanley true alone to Heaven And England's lawful heir! alone is loyal.	22	Of York is better, nay, more just and lawful,	
Who have took oath to Henry and the justice Of Henry's title; Oxford, Surrey, Dawbney, With all your other peers of state and church, Forsworn, and Stanley true alone to Heaven 30 And England's lawful heir! 20 30: Bishop of Durham, Richard Foxe (c. 1448-1528), While a young itinerant scholar and priest living in France, Foxe was befriended by Henry of Richmond, who was in France himself at the time, plotting his rebellion against Richard III. After Henry's voronation (1485), Foxe remained a close and trusted advisor to the king for the remainder of Henry's life, being appointed Bhop of Durham in 1494. Foxe lived a long life, serving Henry VIII as well after Henry VIII's death in 1509. Foxe may be most well-known today for founding Corpus Christi College at Oxford in 1517. 32 Oxf. By Vere's old honours, I'll cut his throat dares speak it. 33 Sur. Tis a quarrel 34 Sur. Tis a quarrel 35 T'engage a soul in. 36 K. Hen. What a coil is here 37 To keep my gratitude sincere and perfect! 40 Stanley was once my friend, and came in time 41 40-41: and camemy life = at the Battle of Bosworth, William Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armies, watching the forces of Henry and Richard fight it out. At a key moment, Thomas sent William and his 3000 troops in on Henry's side, tipping the outcome in his favour. 42 To save my life; – yet, to say truth, my lords, The man stayed long enough t' endanger it: – 44 Than what his outward actions did present; And for 'em have rewarded him so fully, 44 Lequato prints 'em here, emended universally as shown.	24		
With all your other peers of state and church, Forsworn, and Stanley true alone to Heaven And England's lawful heir! 20-30: Bishop of Durham, Richard Foxe (c. 1448-1528), While a young timerant scholar and priest living in France, Foxe was befriended by Henry of Richmond, who was in France himself at the time, plotting his rebellion against Richard III. After Henry's coronation (1485), Foxe remained a close and trusted advisor to the king for the remainder of Henry's life, being appointed Bishop of Durham in 1494. Foxe lived a long life, serving Henry VIII as well after Henry' VII's death in 1509- Foxe up he most well-known today for founding Corpus Christi College at Oxford. 32: Vere was the family name of the Earl of Oxford. 33: Vere was the family name of the Earl of Oxford. 34: Sur. Tis a quarrel T engage a soul in. 36: Warbeck. 37: Were was the family name of the Earl of Oxford. 39: Vere was the family name of the Earl of Oxford. 30: ie. Warbeck. 40: All enry's Gronding Crust of the king for the remainder of the promoning Crust of the maintenees of the maintenees of the maintene	26	Who have took oath to Henry and the justice	
30: ie. Warbeck. 20-30: Bishop of Durham, Richard Foxe (c. 1448-1528), While a young titnerant scholar and priest living in France, Foxe was befriended by Henry of Richmond, who was in France himself at the time, plotting his rebellion against Richard III. After Henry's coronation (1485), Foxe remained a close and trusted advisor to the king for the remainder of Henry's life, being appointed Bishop of Durham in 1494. Foxe lived a long life, serving Henry VIII as well after Henry VIII's death in 1509. Foxe may be most well-known today for founding Corpus Christi College at Oxford in 1517. 32: Vere was the family name of the Earl of Oxford. 33: Vere was the family name of the Earl of Oxford. 34: Sur. Tis a quarrel T engage a soul in. 35: When. What a coil is here To keep my gratitude sincere and perfect! 40: Stanley was once my friend, and came in time 40: Al: and camemy life = at the Battle of Bosworth, William Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armics, watching the forces of Henry and Richard fight it out. At a key moment, Thomas sent William and his 3000 troops in on Henry's side, tipping the outcome in his favour. 41: Al: yet toendanger it = Henry momentarily considers that Stanley may not actually deserve his gratitude; after all, Stanley delayed (stayed) almost too long before entering the battle! 44: The what his outward actions did present; And for 'em have rewarded him so fully, 44: the quarto prints 'em here, emended universally as shown.	28	With all your other peers of state and church,	
While a young itinerant scholar and priest living in France, Foxe was befriended by Henry of Richmond, who was in France himself at the time, plotting his rebellion against Richard III. After Henry's coronation (1485), Foxe remained a close and trusted along life, serving Henry VIII as well after Henry VIII's death in 1509, Exe may be most well-known today for founding Corpus Christi College at Oxford in 1517. 32 Oxf. By Vere's old honours, I'll cut his throat dares speak it. 34 Sur. Tis a quarrel T'engage a soul in. 35 K. Hen. What a coil is here To keep my gratitude sincere and perfect! 40 Stanley was once my friend, and came in time 40 40-41: and camemy life = at the Battle of Bosworth, William Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armies, watching the forces of Henry and Richard fight it out. At a key moment, Thomas sent William and his 3000 troops in on Henry's side, tipping the outcome with sia favour. 41 To save my life; – yet, to say truth, my lords, The man stayed long enough t'endanger it: – 42 To save in his heart Than what his outward actions did present; And for 'em have rewarded him so fully, 44 Than what his outward actions did present; And for 'em have rewarded him so fully, 45 To ent the fine time, plotting his force and trusted a long life, serving the heart and supplied to the stay of the s	30		
I'll cut his throat dares speak it. Sur.			While a young itinerant scholar and priest living in France, Foxe was befriended by Henry of Richmond, who was in France himself at the time, plotting his rebellion against Richard III. After Henry's coronation (1485), Foxe remained a close and trusted advisor to the king for the remainder of Henry's life, being appointed Bishop of Durham in 1494. Foxe lived a long life, serving Henry VIII as well after Henry VII's death in 1509. Foxe may be most well-known today for
Sur. 'Tis a quarrel T' engage a soul in. Ewager. 1.5		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	32: <i>Vere</i> was the family name of the Earl of Oxford.
To keep my gratitude sincere and perfect! Stanley was once my friend, and came in time To save my life; – yet, to say truth, my lords, The man stayed long enough t' endanger it: – But I could see no more into his heart Than what his outward actions did present; And for 'em have rewarded him so fully, To save my life; — wet, to say truth, my lords, Than what his outward actions did present; And for 'em have rewarded him so fully, To save my life; — yet, to say truth, my lords, The man stayed long enough t' endanger it: — Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armies, watching the forces of Henry and Richard fight it out. At a key moment, Thomas sent William and his 3000 troops in on Henry's side, tipping the outcome in his favour. 41-42: yet toendanger it = Henry momentarily considers that Stanley may not actually deserve his gratitude; after all, Stanley delayed (stayed) almost too long before entering the battle! 44	34	Sur Tis a quarrel	
To keep my gratitude <u>sincere</u> and perfect! = genuine, pure. ^{1,9} 40 Stanley was once my friend, and came in time 40-41: and camemy life = at the Battle of Bosworth, William Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armies, watching the forces of Henry and Richard fight it out. At a key moment, Thomas sent William and his 3000 troops in on Henry's side, tipping the outcome in his favour. 41-42: yet toendanger it = Henry momentarily considers that Stanley may not actually deserve his gratitude; after all, Stanley delayed (stayed) almost too long before entering the battle! But I could see no more into his heart Than what his outward actions did present; And for 'em have rewarded him so fully, = genuine, pure. ^{1,9} 40-41: and camemy life = at the Battle of Bosworth, William Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armies, watching the forces of Henry and Richard fight it out. At a key moment, Thomas sent William Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armies, watching the forces of Henry and Richard fight it out. At a key moment, Thomas sent William Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armies, watching the forces of Henry and Richard fight it out. At a key moment, Thomas sent William Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armies, watching the forces of Henry and Richard fight it out. At a key moment, Thomas sent William Stanley and his 2000 troops in on Henry's side, tipping the outcome in his favour. 41-42: yet toendanger it = Henry momentarily considers that Stanley and his 2000 troops in on Henry's side, tipping the outcome in his favour. 41-42: yet toendanger it = Henry momentarily considers that Stanley and his 2000 troops in on Henry's side, tipping the outcome in his favour. 41-42: yet toendanger it = Henry momentarily considers that Stanley and his 2000 tr	36	•	= wager. ^{1,5}
William Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armies, watching the forces of Henry and Richard fight it out. At a key moment, Thomas sent William and his 3000 troops in on Henry's side, tipping the outcome in his favour. To save my life; — yet, to say truth, my lords, The man stayed long enough t' endanger it: — But I could see no more into his heart Than what his outward actions did present; And for 'em have rewarded him so fully, William Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armies, watching the forces of Henry and Richard fight it out. At a key moment, Thomas sent William and his 3000 troops in on Henry's side, tipping the outcome in his favour. 41-42: yet toendanger it = Henry momentarily considers that Stanley may not actually deserve his gratitude; after all, Stanley delayed (stayed) almost too long before entering the battle! 44 Than what his outward actions did present; And for 'em have rewarded him so fully, = the quarto prints 'em here, emended universally as shown.	38		
The man <u>stayed</u> long enough t' endanger it: — But I could see no more into his heart Than what his outward actions did present; And for 'em have rewarded <u>him</u> so fully, that Stanley may not actually deserve his gratitude; after all, Stanley delayed (<i>stayed</i>) almost too long before entering the battle! = the quarto prints ' <i>em</i> here, emended universally as shown.	40	Stanley was once my friend, and came in time	William Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armies, watching the forces of Henry and Richard fight it out. At a key moment, Thomas sent William and his 3000 troops in on Henry's side,
Than what his outward actions did present; And for 'em have rewarded <u>him</u> so fully, = the quarto prints 'em here, emended universally as shown.	42		that Stanley may not actually deserve his gratitude; after all, Stanley delayed (<i>stayed</i>) almost too long before entering the
46 As that there <u>wanted</u> nothing in our gift 46-47: Henry did everything possible to reward (<i>gratify</i>)	44	Than what his outward actions did present;	= the quarto prints 'em here, emended universally as shown.
	46	As that there <u>wanted</u> nothing in our gift	46-47: Henry did everything possible to reward (<i>gratify</i>)

	To gratify his merit, as I thought,	Stanley for effectively making him king, <pre>wanted = lacked.</pre>
48 50	Unless I should divide my crown with him, And give him half; though now I well perceive 'Twould scarce have <u>served his turn</u> without the whole. –	49-50 <i>though nowwhole</i> = his mind turning again, Henry speculates as to whether his friend carried a secret desire to be king himself! served his turn = satisfied him. ¹
52 54	But I am charitable, lords; let justice Proceed in execution, whiles I mourn The loss of one whom I esteemed a friend.	51-53: Henry retreats from his line of thought, but he is clearly conflicted: indeed, how hard it must have been to realize his closest friend of many years had turned against him! Proceed in execution = "take its course", with second-
56	B. of Dur. Sir, he is coming this way.	ary reference to Stanley's expected punishment.
58 60	K. Hen. If he speak to me, I could deny him nothing; to prevent it, I must withdraw. Pray, lords, commend my favours	= ie. to avoid finding himself showing mercy to Stanley. = "give him my good wishes" (Pickburn, p. 117).9
62	To his last peace, which I with him will pray for: That done, it doth concern us to consult Of other following troubles.	61-62: with the Stanley situation dispensed with, Henry must immediately turn to deal with other problems of state.
64	[Exit Henry.]	
66 68	Oxf. I am glad He's gone: upon my life, he would have pardoned The traitor, had he seen him.	
70	Sur. Tis a king Composed of gentleness.	= comprised.
70 72 74	_	= comprised. 74: proverbial: every man works for his own best interests.
72	Composed of gentleness. B. of Dur. Rare and unheard of: But every man is nearest to himself;	
72 74 76 78 80	Composed of gentleness. B. of Dur. Rare and unheard of: But every man is nearest to himself; And that the king observes; 'tis fit he should. Enter Sir William Stanley, Executioner, Confessor,	74: proverbial: every man works for his own best interests.
72 74 76 78 80 82	Composed of gentleness. B. of Dur. Rare and unheard of: But every man is nearest to himself; And that the king observes; 'tis fit he should. Enter Sir William Stanley, Executioner, Confessor, Urswick, and Lord Dawbney. Stan. May I not speak with Clifford ere I shake	74: proverbial: every man works for his own best interests. = priest. = the man who informed on him.
72 74 76 78 80 82 84	Composed of gentleness. B. of Dur. Rare and unheard of: But every man is nearest to himself; And that the king observes; 'tis fit he should. Enter Sir William Stanley, Executioner, Confessor, Urswick, and Lord Dawbney. Stan. May I not speak with Clifford ere I shake This piece of frailty off?	74: proverbial: every man works for his own best interests. = priest. = the man who informed on him.
72 74 76 78 80 82 84 86	Composed of gentleness. B. of Dur. Rare and unheard of: But every man is nearest to himself; And that the king observes; 'tis fit he should. Enter Sir William Stanley, Executioner, Confessor, Urswick, and Lord Dawbney. Stan. May I not speak with Clifford ere I shake This piece of frailty off? Dawb. You shall; he's sent for. Stan. I must not see the king? B. of Dur. From him, Sir William,	74: proverbial: every man works for his own best interests. = priest. = the man who informed on him. = ie. mortal body. ² = ie. may not.
72 74 76 78 80 82 84 86 88	Composed of gentleness. B. of Dur. Rare and unheard of: But every man is nearest to himself; And that the king observes; 'tis fit he should. Enter Sir William Stanley, Executioner, Confessor, Urswick, and Lord Dawbney. Stan. May I not speak with Clifford ere I shake This piece of frailty off? Dawb. You shall; he's sent for. Stan. I must not see the king? B. of Dur. From him, Sir William, These lords and I am sent; he bad us say That he commends his mercy to your thoughts;	74: proverbial: every man works for his own best interests. = priest. = the man who informed on him. = ie. mortal body. ²
72 74 76 78 80 82 84 86 88	Composed of gentleness. B. of Dur. Rare and unheard of: But every man is nearest to himself; And that the king observes; 'tis fit he should. Enter Sir William Stanley, Executioner, Confessor, Urswick, and Lord Dawbney. Stan. May I not speak with Clifford ere I shake This piece of frailty off? Dawb. You shall; he's sent for. Stan. I must not see the king? B. of Dur. From him, Sir William, These lords and I am sent; he bad us say That he commends his mercy to your thoughts; Wishing the laws of England could remit The forfeit of your life as willingly	74: proverbial: every man works for his own best interests. = priest. = the man who informed on him. = ie. mortal body. ² = ie. may not. = ie. "Henry commanded us to say".
72 74 76 78 80 82 84 86 88	Composed of gentleness. B. of Dur. Rare and unheard of: But every man is nearest to himself; And that the king observes; 'tis fit he should. Enter Sir William Stanley, Executioner, Confessor, Urswick, and Lord Dawbney. Stan. May I not speak with Clifford ere I shake This piece of frailty off? Dawb. You shall; he's sent for. Stan. I must not see the king? B. of Dur. From him, Sir William, These lords and I am sent; he bad us say That he commends his mercy to your thoughts; Wishing the laws of England could remit	74: proverbial: every man works for his own best interests. = priest. = the man who informed on him. = ie. mortal body. ² = ie. may not. = ie. "Henry commanded us to say".

98	Oxf. Without remembrance of your errors past, I come to take my leave, and wish you Heaven.	98: ie. "ignoring for the moment your crimes".
100 102	Sur. And I; good angels guard ye!	87-101: despite Stanley's villainy, the other nobles retain their fondness for the lord chamberlain, even as it is understood by all that there can be no other outcome possible than Stanley's death.
	Stan. O, the king,	possible than Stanley's death.
104	Next to my soul, shall be the nearest subject Of my last prayers. – My grave Lord of Durham,	= ie. second only to.
106	My Lords of Oxford, Surrey, Dawbney, all, Accept from a poor dying man a farewell.	
108	I was as you are once, – great, and stood hopeful Of many flourishing years; but fate and time	
110	Have wheeled about, to turn me into nothing.	= allusion to Fortune's wheel, which she is always spinning, raising the luck of some while lowering that of others.
112	<i>Dawb.</i> Sir Robert Clifford comes, – the man, Sir William, You so desire to speak with.	tunning and tunn of some winter to working and of sales.
114	B. of Dur. <u>Mark</u> their meeting.	= "pay attention to"; the nobles are naturally curious to see
116	Enter Sir Robert Clifford.	how Stanley's encounter with his informer will go.
118	Liner sti Robert Cufford.	
120	<i>Clif.</i> Sir William Stanley, I am glad your conscience Before your end hath emptied every <u>burthen</u> Which charged it, <u>as that</u> you can clearly witness	119-121: <i>your consciencecharged it</i> = Clifford is pleased that Stanley has opted to discharge every burden with which his conscience was weighed down. *burthen* = more commonly used than burden* in this
		period. as that = ie. so that.
122	How far I have proceeded in a duty	
124	That both concerned my <u>truth</u> and the state's safety.	= integrity.
124	Stan. Mercy, how dear is life to such as hug it! –	125: Stanley bitterly suggests that Clifford values his life more than his honour.
126	Come <u>hether</u> ; by this <u>token</u> think <u>on</u> me!	126: <i>hether</i> = hither, a common alternate form. This is the only time the quarto prints <i>hether</i> for <i>hither</i> . <i>token</i> = sign. <i>on</i> = about.
128	[Makes a cross on Clifford's face with his finger.]	
130	Clif. This token! What! I am <u>abused</u> ?	= insulted; note how Clifford remains indignant over this affront, but no one pays attention to him: after all, no one likes a traitor or an informer!
132	Stan. You are not. I wet upon your cheeks a holy sign, –	
134	The cross, the Christian's badge, the traitor's infamy: Wear, Clifford, to thy grave this painted emblem;	= ie. the cross as a symbol of a Christian.
136	Water shall never wash it off; all eyes	
138	That gaze upon thy face shall read there written A state-informer's <u>character</u> ; more ugly Stamped on a noble name than on a base.	138: <i>character</i> = meaning both (1) disposition, and (2) sign. 6 138-9: <i>more uglybase</i> = to be an informer wears worse on a noble person (in both senses of "noble") than on a lowborn or low-bred one.
140	The heavens forgive thee! – Pray, my lords, no <u>change</u> Of words; this man and I have <u>used</u> too many.	= exchange. = ie. already passed or exchanged.

142	Clif. Shall I be disgraced	
144	Without reply?	
146	B. of Dur . Give losers leave to talk; His loss is irrecoverable.	146-7: "let Stanley say what he wants; he will be dead soon anyway."
148150152	Stan. Once more, To all a long farewell! The best of greatness Preserve the king! My next suit is, my lords, To be remembered to my noble brother, Derby, my much-grieved brother: Oh, persuade him	= ie. "may God".6 = request. = Thomas Stanley, 1st Earl of Derby (1435-1504), older brother of William. Like William, Thomas was not always
		loyal to one side or the other in the War of the Roses. The story of his weaselly ability to play both sides makes for quite entertaining reading. Also like William, Thomas brought a small army (5,000 men) to the field at Bosworth; but unlike William, Thomas stood aloof with his forces throughout the entire battle. It is Thomas who was the Stanley portrayed in Shakespeare's Richard III.
154 156	That I shall <u>stand no</u> blemish to his house In chronicles writ in another age. My heart doth bleed for him and for his sighs:	= be no permanent.155: in the history books of the future.156: a reference to the belief that the heart loses a drop of
130	Tell him, he must not think the <u>style</u> of Derby,	blood for every <i>sigh</i> one takes. = title or name.
158	Nor being husband to King Henry's mother,	158: William Stanley's brother Thomas, 1st Earl of Derby, had been married to Henry's mother since before the Battle of Bosworth, making him Henry's step-father.
160	The league with peers, the smiles of fortune, can Secure his peace above the state of man. I take my leave, to travel to my dust:	= "the human condition (of uncertainty)" (Gibson, p. 261). ⁶ 161-2: Stanley's part in the play ends with a rhyming
162	"Subjects deserve their deaths whose kings are just." – Come, <u>cónfessor</u> . – On with thy axe, friend, on!	couplet. = stressed on its first syllable in this era.
164	[He is led off to execution.]	165: Stanley was beheaded 16 February 1495 on Tower Hill, ten days after his conviction.
166 168	<i>Clif.</i> Was I called hither by a traitor's breath To be upbraided? Lords, the king shall know it.	167-8: Clifford is still irate over Stanley's insult, but no one cares.
170	Re-enter King Henry with a white staff.	= this is Stanley's staff of office: see lines 190-1 below.
172	K. Hen. The king doth know it, sir; the king hath heard	172-6: Henry has heard the entire conversation with Stanley, Clifford, and the nobles.
174	What he or you could say. We have given credit To every point of Clifford's information, The only evidence 'gainst Stanley's head:	Chirord, and the hobies.
176	'A dies for't; are you pleased?	= sarcastic.
178	Clif. I pleased, my lord!	178: Clifford is taken aback by the king's tone.
180	<i>K. Hen.</i> No echoes: for your service, we dismiss Your more attendance on the court; take ease,	= "please do not repeat my words back to me." = further.
182 184	And live at home; but, as you love your life, Stir not from London without leave from us. We'll think on your reward: away!	= permission.

186	Clif.	I go, sir.	186: Clifford received his pardon on 22 December 1494, as well as a payment of 500 pounds on the following 30
188		[Exit Clifford.]	January.
190		r griefs with Stanley! Take this staff y; henceforth be our chamberlain.	= Giles Daubeney, Lord (1451-1508). The young Daubeney
192			had served Edward IV, but after having supported the Duke of Buckingham's failed rebellion against Richard III, fled to France. Always a "well-wisher" of the Earl of Richmond, he remained a trusted companion of King Henry VII, serving him in various capacities, including that of Lord Chamberlain after Stanley's execution. Daubeney died a year before the king he loyally served did.
194	Dawb. I am your h		
196	K. Hen. By enemies at hom	We are followed te, that will not cease	
	To seek their own	confusion: 'tis most true	= ruin.
198 200	As far as Winchest	Audley are marched on er; – but let them come, eadiness; we'll catch 'em	= city located 60 miles west of London.
	In their own toils.	additions, we'll edited our	= snares.
202		Your army, being mustered,	
204		norse and foot, at least twenty thousand; men	= of cavalry and infantry.
206	Daring and able, re And loyal in their t	esolute to fight,	207: ie. and loyal to the king.
208	-		207. Ic. and Toyar to the Ming.
210	K. Hen. For them we order Assisted by bold E	We know it, Dawbney: thus; Oxford in chief, ssex and the Earl	
212		ad on the first <u>battalia;</u>	= battalion or division.
214	Oxf.	I humbly thank your majesty.	= John de Vere, thirteenth Earl of Oxford (1443-1513).
216		division we assign to Dawbney:	De Vere's brother and father, devout Lancastrians both, were executed in February 1462, when the Yorkist Edward IV successfully seized the throne. Young John continued the family's tradition of supporting the Lancastrians, and paid for that bias by spending several spells in prison when the Yorkists were in power. He managed to escape imprisonment during Richard III's reign, and headed to France to join Henry of Richmond. At Bosworth, he commanded Henry's right wing, and for the rest of his long life received many honours and offices from the grateful king. De Vere was instrumental in the defeat of the Cornish rebels in 1497. He finally died a natural death on 10 March 1513.
218	These must be men	of action, for on those	
220	The fortune of our The last and main of	fortunes must rely. <u>ourself commands</u> in person;	= ie. main division. = ie. "I will command".
222		the fight at all times	221-2: Henry must be as prepared to use his army to reverse any setback on the battlefield as he is to use it to press
	115 to consummate	an assured victory.	home victory.

ĺ		l I
224	<i>Dawb.</i> The king is still <u>oraculous</u> .	= archaic form of "oracular", suggesting his statements are infallible, or simply "wise".
226	K. Hen. But, Surrey,	226-7: Henry has reserved a more difficult assignment for
228	We have employment of more toil for thee: For our intelligence comes swiftly to us,	Surrey.
230	That James of Scotland <u>late</u> hath <u>entertained</u> Perkin the counterfeit with more than <u>common</u> Cross and respect they counts him with rore forwards.	= recently. = welcomed. = normal.
232	Grace and respect, nay, courts him with rare favours. The Scot is young and forward; we must look for A sudden storm to England from the north;	= ie. James. = spirited. ¹ 233: ie. an invasion by Scotland.
234	Which to withstand, Durham shall post to Norham, To fortify the castle and secure	234-6: the bishop is placed in charge of preparing the important border castle at Norham for James' expected
236	The frontiers against an invasion there. Surrey shall follow soon, with such an army	invasion.
238	As may relieve the bishop, and encounter	
240	On all occasions the death-daring Scots. You know your <u>charges</u> all; 'tis now a time To execute, not talk: Heaven is our guard still.	= orders ¹ or responsibilitles. ⁶
242	War must breed peace; such is the fate of kings.	
	[Exeunt.]	
	ACT II, SCENE III.	
	Edinburgh. An Apartment in the Palace.	
	Enter Earl of Crawford and Lord Dalyell.	
1 2 4	<i>Craw.</i> 'Tis more than strange; my reason cannot answer Such argument of fine imposture, couched In witchcraft of persuasion, that it fashions Impossibilities, as if appearance	1-6: Crawford is mystified as to how Warbeck's admittedly excellent impersonation of the Duke of York could fool James.
•	Could <u>cozen</u> truth itself: this <u>dukeling mushroom</u>	5: cozen = deceive. dukeling mushroom = Crawford describes Warbeck with a pair of contemptuous words: dukeling simply means little or petty duke; mushroom was a common Elizabethan term used to describe any individual who has suddenly, and largely undeservedly, risen dramatically in status.
6	Hath doubtless <u>charmed</u> the king.	= bewitched. ⁵
8	Daly. 'A courts the ladies, As if his strength of language chained attention	8-10: the women are mesmerized by Warbeck's smooth speech, which is backed by his allegedly royal blood.
10	By power of <u>prerogative</u> .	= privilege of royalty. ¹
12	Craw. It madded My very soul to hear our master's motion:	= angered. = ie. King James' proposal. ² James has announced that he will support a marriage between Katherine and Warbeck.
14	What surety both of amity and honour	14-17: Crawford is worried about the consequences to

16 18	Must of necessity ensue upon A <u>match</u> betwixt some noble of our nation And this <u>brave prince</u> , <u>forsooth</u> !	national honour should a Scottish lady marry the fraud Warbeck. surety = confidence or guarantee. amity = friendship.9 match = marriage.	
	Daly. 'Twill prove too fatal;	brave prince = excellent prince, ie. Warbeck, ironic. forsooth = in truth.	
20	Wise Huntley fears the threatening. Bless the lady From such a ruin!	20-21: Huntley is worried about the danger to his daughter's, and his own, reputation, if she must wed the imposter.	
22		23-27 (below): Crawford mercilessly mocks Warbeck's crew of supporters, noting with amusement how they are being presently constrained, by the nature of their positions, to behave with a level of solemnity and seriousness (<i>gravity</i> , line 25) they would never have had to endure if they had stuck to the trades they had originally trained for!	
	Craw. How the counsel privy	= the term <i>Privy Council</i> was used to describe the king's close body of advisors, which was usually made up largely of high officials of the state; in applying this name to Warbeck's motley crew, Crawford's satire is biting. The OED notes that <i>council</i> was often confused with <i>counsel</i> by the old writers.	
24	Of this young Phaëthon do screw their faces	24: Crawford refers to Warbeck as <i>Phaeton</i> as a way to describe the Pretender as a political novice, who, ambitious to accomplish something well beyond his abilities, is headed for certain destruction. **Phaeton** was a son of Apollo, who, in a famous myth, granted Phaeton one wish to prove he was his father. Phaeton asked to be allowed to drive the chariot that pulled the sun across the sky for one day. Apollo, forced by his promise to acquiesce, warned the boy to be careful. Phaeton could not control the horses, and would have crashed onto the earth had not Jupiter killed him with a thunderbolt.	
26	Into a gravity their trades, good people, Were never guilty of! the meanest of 'em Dreams of at least an office in the state.	26-27: <i>the meaneststate</i> = even the lowest-born of Warbeck's followers hopes to receive a high office	
28		once Warbeck takes the throne, in return for his support.	
30	Daly. Sure, not the hangman's; 'tis bespoke already For service to their rogueships – Silence!	29-30: one position to which the advisors will not aspire is that of hangman, because the job will already be filled – by the man who will hang them all! Sure = certainly, an adverb. their rogueships = parody of "their lordships".	
32	Enter King James and Earl of Huntley.	Entering Characters: Huntley has been trying to convince the king that Warbeck is a fraud, so as to save Katherine from marrying him – and James is getting ticked off!	
34	K. Ja. Do not	34-39: James warns Huntley that, by deigning to listen to	
36	Argue against our will; we have descended Somewhat – as we may term it – too familiarly From justice of our birthright, to examine	the nobleman's arguments, he (James) has already lowered his dignity as king.	
38	The <u>force</u> of your allegiance, – sir, we have, –	= strength. ⁶	
40	But find it short of duty.	39: James accuses Huntley of being disrespectful.	

42	Hunt. Break my heart, Do, do, king! Have my services, my loyalty, – Heaven knows untainted ever, – drawn upon me	= Huntley's record of loyalty to the king is unblemished.
44	Contempt now in mine age, when I but wanted A minute of a peace not to be troubled,	44: <i>mine age</i> = ie. "my old age". 44-46: <i>when Ilong one</i> = "when I was but a figurative minute away from enjoying an anxiety-free old age in the time I have left?" ^{6,11}
46	My last, my long one? <u>Let me be a dotard</u> , A <u>bedlam</u> , a poor sot, or what you please	= "you can think me a senile old man". = madman; London's Bethlehem Hospital for the insane was usually referred to as <i>Bedlam</i> , an old alternate name for Bethlehem.
48	To have me, so you will not stain your blood, Your own blood, royal sir, though mixed with mine,	= defile, make impure.
50	By marriage of this girl to a straggler:	50: <i>this girl</i> = ie. Katherine; <i>girl</i> is a disyllable here. <i>straggler</i> = tramp, vagabond: a reference to Warbeck's itinerancy.
52	Take, take my head, sir; whilst my tongue can wag, It cannot name him other.	52: ie. Huntley cannot call Warbeck anything but a <i>strag-gler</i> .
54 56	K. Ja. Kings are counterfeits In your repute, grave oracle, not presently Set on their thrones with sceptres in their fists.	54-56: James is sarcastic; <i>Kings</i> = read as "those kings". = opinion. ¹ = read as "who are not".
58	But <u>use</u> your own <u>detraction</u> ; 'tis our pleasure To give <u>our cousin York</u> for wife our kinswoman,	= perpetrate. ¹ = loss of reputation. ¹ = ie. Warbeck.
	The Lady Katherine: <u>instinct</u> of sovereignty	59-60: <i>instincthonour</i> = James' own <i>instinct</i> tells him that Warbeck is royalty, which makes him worthy of receiving Katherine as his wife. ⁶
60 62	Designs the honour, though her peevish father Usurps our resolution.	60-61: <i>thoughresolution</i> = James is again sarcastic. 61: "would overrule my decision", with a metaphor of overthrowing the king.
64	Hunt. O, 'tis well, Exceeding well! I never was ambitious Of using congees to my daughter-queen –	63-65: Huntley, not above using irony himself, claims to be pleased that Katherine will wed Warbeck: if Katherine were to marry an actual prince or king, Huntley would presumably
		adopt the practice of bowing to her (<i>congees</i> = bows); but now, luckily, if she marries Warbeck, who is not genuine royalty, Huntley will be spared the effort and indignity.
66	A queen! perhaps a quean! – Forgive me, Dalyell,	= whore; it is interesting to speculate whether an audience would recognize the pun in the similar sounding words; note that Huntley immediately apologizes for talking this way about the woman Dalyell loves. **A queen! perhaps a quean!* = this is the universally accepted emendation of the quarto's text, which reads, "A queen, perhaps a queen?" An early commentator, believing that Huntley would never use such a derogatory term as quean to describe Katherine, suggests the following emendation: "A queen, perhaps! A queen?"
68	Thou honourable gentleman; – none here Dare speak one word of comfort?	67-68: <i>none herecomfort</i> = "won't anyone back me up here?" Dalyell and Crawford will take up the mantle on Huntley's behalf, but only half-heartedly.
70	Daly. Cruël misery!	, ,

	1	1
72	<i>Craw.</i> The lady, gracious prince, maybe hath settled Affection on some former choice.	72-73: maybe Katherine already loves someone else.
74		
76	Would prove but tyranny.	75-76: to force Katherine into a marriage she does not desire would be tyrannical!
78	Hunt. I thank 'ee heartily. –	78: this line could be understood to be sarcastic. 'ee = frequent substitute for ye.
80	Let any <u>yeoman</u> of our nation <u>challenge</u> An interest in the <u>girl</u> , then the king May add a <u>jointure</u> of <u>ascent</u> in titles,	79-81: <i>Let anyconsent</i> = James could just as well marry Katherine off to any middling Englishman, and make it right by providing a metaphoric marriage settlement (<i>jointure</i>) ² of new high-ranking titles. **yeoman* = respectable countryman or landholder. **challenge* = demand as a right, ie. lay claim to. **girl* = a disyllable here. **ascent* = advancement, promotion.
82	Worthy a free consent; now 'a pulls down What old desert hath builded.	82-83: <i>now 'abuilded</i> = a lament: in the old days, marriages were granted based on merit (<i>desert</i>), but the king has effaced the old rules.
84	K. Ja. Cease persuasions.	has effaced the old rules.
86	I violate no pawns of faith, intrude not	86-87: <i>I violateloves</i> = James is unaware of Dalyell's interest in Katherine. *pawns of faith = promises to marry.
88	On private loves: that I have played the orator For kingly York to virtuous Kate, her grant Can justify, referring her contents	87-90: <i>that Iprovision</i> = James has already spoken to Katherine about a marriage with Warbeck, so he suggests his advisors consult Katherine, who has consented to go along with whatever the kings wants! *provision* (line 90) = providing.9
90	To our provision. The Welsh Harry henceforth	= ie. King Henry VII, who was born in Wales, and descended from the Welsh Tudors; notice how James, since he is recognizing Warbeck as England's legitimate sovereign, will not refer to Henry as "king."
	Shall therefore know, and tremble to acknowledge,	not leter to flemy as king.
92	That not the <u>painted</u> idol of his policy	= counterfeit, fraudulent.
94	Shall <u>fright</u> the lawful owner from a kingdom. We are <u>resolved</u> .	= frighten. = ie. Warbeck. = decided.
96	Hunt. Some of thy subjects' hearts, King James, will bleed for this.	= ie. from sorrow. ¹
98	V In There shall their bloods	
100	K. Ja. Then shall their bloods Be nobly spent. No more disputes; he is not Our friend who contradicts us.	
102	our friend who contiduots us.	
104	Hunt. Farewell, daughter! My care by one is lessened, thank the king for't:	104: Huntley claims to be relieved of further responsibility
106	I and my griefs will dance now.	for worrying about and supporting Katherine. 105: a heart-rending metaphor.
-00	Enter Perkin Warbeck,	
108	leading and <u>complimenting with</u> Lady Katherine; Countess of Crawford, Jane,	= exchanging courtly courtesies. ¹
110	Frion, Astley, John A-Water, Heron, and Sketon.	

112	Look, lords, look; <u>Here's</u> hand in hand already!	= ie. "they are".
114	K. Ja. Peace, old <u>frenzy</u> ! –	= deranged one; James is still peeved at Huntley.
116	How like a king he looks! – Lords, but observe The confidence of his aspéct; dross cannot	117: <i>aspect</i> = stressed on its second syllable.
118	Cleave to so pure a metal – royal youth!	117-8: <i>drossmetal</i> = <i>dross</i> is the extraneous matter
120	Plantagenet undoubted!	removed from metals during the purification process. ¹ James' point is that Warbeck is of such obviously royal content that it is not possible he could be anything less.
	Hunt. [Aside] Ho, brave! – Youth,	121: <i>brave</i> = excellent. <i>Youth</i> = the quarto prints <i>lady</i> here, which is universally emended as shown. line 121: the line is shown as it has been punctuated by earlier editors; more recent editions print the line as, "Ho, brave youth,".
122	But no Plantagenet, <u>by'r lady</u> , yet, By red rose or by white.	= "by our lady", an oath, a reference to the Virgin Mary. 123: an allusion to the symbols of the houses of Lancaster
124	<i>Warb</i> . [To Katherine] An union this way	and York, respectively, who fought the War of the Roses.
126	Settles possession in a monarchy Established rightly, as is my inheritance:	
128 130	Acknowledge me but sovereign of this kingdom, Your heart, fair princess, and the hand of providence	
	Shall crown you queen of me and my best fortunes.	
132 134	<i>Kath.</i> Where my obedience is, my lord, a duty Love owes true service.	132-3: Katherine, perhaps surprisingly, seems to be pleased to marry Warbeck, but her attraction was foreshadowed at Act II.i.157f.
	Warb. [To James] Shall I? -	at Act III.137j.
136 138	<i>K. Ja.</i> Cousin, yes, Enjoy her; from my hand accept your bride;	
140	[He joins their hands.]	
142	And may they live at enmity with comfort	= ie. anyone. = the quarto here prints <i>emnity</i> , an incorrect spelling which appeared more often than you would think in 16th and 17th centuries publications.
144	Who grieve at such an equal <u>pledge of troths</u> ! – Y[ou] are the prince's wife now.	= exchange of wedding vows.
146	<i>Kath.</i> By your gift, sir.	
148	Warb. Thus I take seizure of mine own.	= perhaps used humorously as a legal term for a sudden taking of possession.
150	Kath. I miss yet	= lack. ⁶
152	A father's blessing. Let me find it; – humbly Upon my knees I seek it.	152: Katherine kneels before Huntley here; kneeling is the traditional dramatic form of supplication.
154	<i>Hunt.</i> I am Huntley, Old Alexander Gordon, a plain subject,	11
156	Nor more nor less; and, lady, if you wish for	

158 160	A blessing, you must bend your knees to Heaven; For Heaven did give me you. – Alas, alas, What would you have me say? May all the happiness My prayers ever sued to fall upon you Preserve you in your virtues! – Preethee, Dalyell,	= asked for. = please; the more frequently used form of the word was <i>prithee</i> . Huntley's words to Dalyell, as well as the latter's response, are presumably spoken out of the king's hearing.
162	Come with me; for I feel thy griefs as full As mine; let's steal away, and cry together.	ing.
164	Daly. My hopes are in their ruins.	
166	[Exeunt Earl of Huntley and Lord Dalyell.]	
168	K. Ja. Good, kind Huntley	
170	Is overjoyed: a fit solemnity	= festivity, ie. wedding celebration. ⁵
172	Shall <u>pérfit</u> these delights. – Crawford, attend Our order for the preparation.	171: <i>perfit</i> = ie. perfect, a common alternate form of <i>perfect</i> as a verb; stressed on its first syllable. 171-2: <i>attendorder</i> = ie. "await my instructions".
174	[Exeunt all but Frion, Heron, Sketon, John A-Water, and Astley.]	Entering Characters: Warbeck's followers provide the play's comic relief.
176 178	<i>Frion.</i> Now, worthy gentlemen, have I not followed My undertakings with success? Here's entrance Into a certainty above a hope.	177-9: Frion suggests that his work to promote Warbeck internationally is working, and that their <i>entrance</i> into James' acceptance will raise their <i>hopes</i> of success to <i>certainty</i> of success.
180		Stephen Frion had been a secretary to Henry VII, but had deserted his post, and entered the service of the French king. Frion was one of the ambassadors Charles had sent to Ireland in 1491 to invite Warbeck to France.
		181ff (below): Speeches of the Advisors: note how Warbeck's counselors speak in hilariously absurd metaphors connected to their professions: Heron's speeches are littered with a mercer's lingo, Sketon with that of a tailor, and Astley with that of a scrivener. Throughout the play, Warbeck's followers, excepting the erudite Frion, speak in prose, as ignoble and low-born Elizabethan characters frequently do.
	Heron. Hopes are but hopes; I was ever confident,	181: Gibson tells us that Heron was a London merchant who fled to Ireland to avoid creditors.
182	when I traded but in <u>remnants</u> , that my stars had reserved me to the title of a viscount at least: honour	182: <i>remnants</i> = leftover cloth; Heron is a mercer, or dealer in fine textiles. 182-3: <i>my starsat least</i> = Heron refers to the <i>stars</i> in their role in determining individuals' fates.
184	is honour, though cut out of any stuffs.	= no matter the quality (ie. good or bad) of the metaphorical material (<i>stuffs</i>) from which honour derives.
186	<i>Sket.</i> My brother Heron hath right wisely delivered his opinion; for he that threads his needle with the	186ff: Edward Sketon is a tailor.

188	sharp eyes of industry shall in time go through-stitch with the new suit of preferment.	= a stitch drawn straight through material; hence, anything carried all the way to completion. ¹ = advancement (in rank, position or status).
190	Ast. Spoken to the purpose, my fine-witted brother	191-5: Nicholas Astley is a scrivener, or scribe.
192	Sketon; for as no <u>indenture</u> but has its <u>counterpawne</u> ,	192: <i>indenture</i> = contract. ¹ <i>counterpawne</i> = alternate form of <i>counterpane</i> , referring to the counterpart of an indenture, ie. a copy of a contract kept by the parties. ¹
	no <u>noverint</u> but <u>his condition</u> or <u>defeasance</u> ; so no right	193: <i>noverint</i> = writ or bond. ^{1,5} <i>his</i> = its. <i>condition</i> = a clause in a contract which is fulfilled when the contract takes effect. ⁵ <i>defeasance</i> = a condition whose performance nullifies a contract. ¹
194 196	but may have claim, no claim but may have possession, any act of Parliament to the contrary notwithstanding.	
170	Frion. You are all <u>read</u> in mysteries of state,	197-200: Frion always treats his cohorts with entertaining gravity, though he is perfectly aware they are all buffoons. *read* = learned.
198	And quick of apprehension, deep in judgment, Active in resolution; and 'tis pity	= to understand.
200	Such counsel should lie buried in obscurity. – But why, in such a time and cause of triumph,	
202	Stands the judicious Mayor of Cork so silent? Believe it, sir, as English Richard prospers,	203-4: Frion reminds the mayor that he too should expect
204	You must not miss employment of high nature.	to receive a high position as Warbeck's prospects come to fruition. **English Richard** = ie. Warbeck, as Richard, Duke of York: of course, Warbeck's followers must refer to him by this name and title, whether they believe he is that person or not.
		206-210 (below): John A-Water's Speeches: the ex-mayor of Cork speaks with the convolution and equivocation of a true politician, usually descending into utter nonsense.
206	J. a-Wat. If men may be <u>credited in their mortality</u> , which I dare not peremptorily aver but they may or not	= "believed, mortal as they are" (Gibson, p. 269).6
208	be, <u>presumptions</u> by this marriage are then, in sooth, of fruitful expectation. Or else I must not <u>justify</u> other	= expectations. ¹ = uphold. ⁶
210	men's belief, more than other should rely on mine.	
212	<i>Frion.</i> Pith of experience! those that have borne office Weigh every word before it can drop from them.	212-3: Frion hilariously praises the mayor for thinking before he speaks! *Pith of experience* = ie. "spoken with the gravity that comes from experience!"
		214-8 (below): Frion suggests that Warbeck's advisors prepare an entertainment for the guests at his upcoming wedding. If they fail to do so, the Scots, some of whom will also put on a performance of some sort, would collect all the honour. Such entertainments, usually in the form of a masque, are frequently performed by the guests at a function

		such as this.
214216218	But, noble counsellors, since now the present Requires in point of honour, – pray, mistake not, – Some service to our lord, 'tis fit the Scots Should not engross all glory to themselves At this so grand and eminent solemnity.	= monopolize. ² = ie. the wedding of Warbeck and Katherine.
220	<i>Sket.</i> The Scots! the motion is defied: I had rather,	= ie. "the suggestion that the Scots are likely to engross all the glory for themselves is repudiated" (Pickburn,
222 224	for my part, without <u>trial of my country</u> , suffer persecution under the pressing-iron of reproach; or let my skin be punched full of eyelet-holes with the <u>bodkin</u> of derision.	p. 122). ⁵ = Gibson suggests, "trial by jury". = a pointed tool for piercing a hole into cloth. ¹
226	Ast. I will sooner lose both my ears on the <u>pillory</u> of forgery.	226-7: while secured in a <i>pillory</i> (stocks for the arms and head), ⁷ a prisoner might have his ears nailed to the frame, with the expectation that the ears would be torn off as he or she moved.
228	Heron. Let me first live <u>a bankrout</u> , and die in the <u>lousy</u>	= ie. bankrupted. = filthy.
230	<u>Hole</u> of hunger, without <u>compounding</u> for sixpence in the pound.	230: <i>Hole</i> = in the debtor prison known as the Counter, the <i>Hole</i> was where the poorer prisoners were kept; ³ an inmate
232		with a little money could usually purchase some comforts from his jailers. compounding = "paying off my debts".6 230-1: for sixpence in the pound = at an interest rate of 2.5% (since there were 240 pence in a pound).1
234236	<i>J. a-Wat.</i> If men fail not in their expectations, there may be spirits also that <u>disgest</u> no rude affronts, Master Secretary Frion, or I am <u>cozened</u> ; which is possible, I grant.	= ie. digest, a common alternate form, meaning "tolerate". = deceived.
238	<i>Frion.</i> Resolved like men of knowledge: at this feast, then,	= Frion congratulates the wise advisors for favouring his idea unanimously.
240	In honour of the bride, the Scots, I know, Will in some show, some <u>masque</u> , or some <u>device</u> ,	240: <i>masque</i> = a brief entertainment, usually with music and dancing, and involving gods and allegorical characters. <i>device</i> = spectacle.
242	Prefer their duties: now it were uncomely That we be found less forward for our prince	= present. = would be unseemly or unbecoming. = enthusiastic, ie. eager to perform.
244	Than they are for their lady; and by how much We outshine them in persons of account,	244: "we outperform the Scottish".6
246	By so much more will our endeavours meet with A livelier applause. Great emperors Have for their recreations undertook	
248	Such kind of pastimes: as for the conceit, Refer it to my study; the performance	248-250: <i>as forthanks in</i> = Frion reserves for himself the job of devising and writing the masque, but assures the others they will each have a role to play in it. <i>conceit</i> = idea (regarding the content of the masque).
250	You all shall share a thanks in: <u>'twill be grateful</u> .	= ie. the masque can be expected to be pleasing (<i>grateful</i>). ¹
		252-9 (below): the counsellors advise Frion as to their dancing skills.

252	<i>Heron.</i> The motion is allowed: I have stole to a dancing school when I was a prentice.	= "the suggestion for a pageant is agreed to." ⁵
254	•	d - (16 - C 1 1 1 1 C 1 1 1
256	Ast. There have been <u>Irish hubbubs</u> , when I have <u>made one</u> too.	= the tumult of noisy crowds, as at wakes and fairs. ^{1,11} = ie. taken part (in the dancing). ¹
258	<i>Sket.</i> For fashioning of <u>shapes</u> and cutting a <u>cross-caper</u> , turn me off to my trade again.	258: <i>shapes</i> = the OED suggests "one's posture" in dancing; but <i>shapes</i> can also mean "costumes" (we remember
260		that Sketon is a tailor). cross-caper = a form of dancing. ¹
262	J. a-Wat. Surely there is, if I be not deceived, a kind of gravity in merriment; as there is, or perhaps ought to	- hoosing
264	be, respect of persons in the quality of <u>carriage</u> , which is as it is construed, either so or so.	= bearing.
266	Frion. Still you come home to me; upon occasion	266: Stillto me = something like "you are always (still) on the same page as me."
	I find you relish courtship with discretion;	 upon occasion = at all times.¹ = "you practice courtly behaviour with moderation."^{1,5}
268	And such are fit for statesmen of your merits.	= ie. "such tempered behaviour is". ⁵
270	<u>Pray 'e</u> wait the prince, and in his ear acquaint him With this design; I'll follow and direct 'ee.	= "pray ye", ie. "please".
	with this design; i'll follow and direct ee.	
272	[Exeunt all but Frion.]	
274	O, the toil	274-281: now that he is alone, Frion tells us what he really
	Of humouring this abject scum of mankind,	thinks of his fellow-conspirators!
276	Muddy-brained peasants! princes feel a misery Beyond impartial sufferance, whose extremes	276-8: <i>princes feelabettors</i> = in times of tribulation, kings must shamefully accept help from whoever willingly offers
	Beyond impartial sufferance, whose extremes	any, no matter how inferior in skill and status they are.
		Beyond impartial sufferance = "beyond that which one might ordinarily be expected to endure", or "in which one
		cannot help but take part" (Gibson, p. 123). ⁵ extremes = extreme circumstances.
278	Must yield to such abettors: – <u>yet</u> our tide	278-280: <i>yet oursea</i> = a sailing metaphor for Frion's op-
	Runs smoothly, without adverse winds: <u>run on!</u>	timism: wind and tide are in their favour: the scheme to raise Warbeck to power is, so far (<i>yet</i>), proceeding swimmingly!
		run on = "sail on", i ie. "let us continue down this road!"
280	Flow to a full sea! time alone debates Quarrels forewritten in the book of fates.	280-1: <i>timeQuarrels</i> = perhaps, "time alone reveals causes' outcomes, which are predetermined by Fate."
282		debates = diminishes. ¹
	[Exit.]	
	END OF ACT II.	

	ACT III.	
	SCENE I.	
	Westminster. The Palace.	
	Enter King Henry, with his <u>gorget</u> on, his sword, plume of feathers, and <u>leading staff,</u> followed by Urswick.	Entering Characters: Henry and Urswick are dressed and armed for battle: today is the day they will face the Cornish rebel army. gorget = piece of armour for protecting the throat. leading staff = truncheon, ie. a staff representing command, like a marshal's baton. 1
1 2	K. Hen. How runs the time of day?	1: while it was common to describe time as "running", and proverbial to observe that "time runs away", Ford here invented a new expression by which to ask for the time.
4	Urs. Past ten, my lord.	veneed a new expression by which to ask for the time.
7	K. Hen. A bloody hour will it prove to some,	= a disyllable here: <i>OW-er</i> .
6	Whose disobedience, like the sons oth earth, Throws a defiance 'gainst the face of Heaven.	6-7: Henry compares the rebels to the Titans of Greek mythology. The Titans, offspring of Uranus and Gaea (she being the personification of <i>earth</i> , hence the Titans were <i>the sons oth earth</i>), overthrew the gods who ruled before them, before being themselves subsequently overthrown by the Olympian gods (Jupiter, etc.). ⁴ <i>oth</i> = of the.
8	Oxford, with Essex and stout De la Pole,	= brave.
10	Have quieted the Londoners, I hope, And set them safe from fear.	9-10: Gainsford describes how the citizens of London went into panic mode upon the approach of the rebels, "chaining the streets, making strong the gates, doubling the watches, [and] hiding their treasure" (p. 81).
12	<i>Urs.</i> They are all <u>silent</u> .	= quiet, ie. calm.
14	K. Hen. From their own <u>battlements</u> they may behold <u>Saint George's-fields</u> o'erspread with armèd men;	14-15: the Cornish rebels, now an armed mob of thousands, had traveled quickly through England, reaching Blackheath, a section of public land located four miles south-east of 16th century London, 5,15 where they would be met by the royal forces. **battlements* = ie. the city walls of London. **Saint George's-fields* = an open area in Lambeth in south London. 15
16	Amongst whom our own royal standard threatens Confusion to opposers: we must learn	16-17: <i>Amongstopposers</i> = Henry placed his own division of the army at St. George's Fields, keeping it directly between London and the rebels. <i>Confusion</i> = destruction.
18 20	To practise war again in time of peace, Or lay our crown before our subjects' feet; Ha, Urswick, must we not?	
22	Urs. The powers who seated	22-24: the armed forces (<i>powers</i>) who backed Henry in his
24	King Henry on his lawful throne will ever Rise up in his defence.	quest for the English crown will ever be ready to fight on his behalf.

26	K. Hen.	<u>Rage</u> shall not fright	= violence.
20	The bosom of our confidence: in Kent		27-31: <i>in Kenthearts</i> = the rebel invaders were initially
28	Our Cornish rebels, <u>cozened</u> of their hopes, Met brave resistance by <u>that country's earl</u> ,		checked by a detachment of 500 royal soldiers at Guilford in Surrey County, near the border of Kent County, before
30	George Abergeny, Cobham, Poynings, Guilford, And other loyal hearts; now, if Blackheath		moving on to Blackheath. cozened (line 28) = deceived, cheated. 1,6 that country's earl = ie. Kent county's George Grey, Earl of Kent.
32	Must be <u>reserved</u> the fata Such <u>stiff-necked</u> <u>abjects</u>		= ie. saved for the purpose of becoming. ² 33: <i>stiff-necked</i> = obstinate. ¹ <i>abjects</i> = exiles or downtrodden people. <i>as</i> = who.
34	Have travelled from their	homes, their wives, and children,	as – who.
36	To pay, instead of subside We may continue sovere	<u>lies</u> , their lives,	= ie. the taxes placed on Cornish, the cause of the revolt.
	We'll not abate one penn		37-38: <i>what incontributed</i> = a king could not raise taxes
38	Hath freely been contribu	ited; we must not;	on his own initiative: an assessment could only be declared by Parliament. Historically, the Cornish were protesting the heavy taxes levied by Henry to pay for the war against Scotland; but in our play, the war with England's northern neighbour has not yet started, so that Ford, in modifying the timeline of events, has, dramatically speaking, left it unclear as to why the tax was imposed.
40	Money gives soul to acti		39-42: <i>Our competitorsupplies</i> = Henry expects the
40	The Flemish counterfeit, Will prove what courage	need and want can nourish,	poor Scots will lack sufficient provisions to maintain an army. The king is ironic here: James and Warbeck will learn
42	Without the food of fit su		to their chagrin the degree to which <i>need and want</i> (lack of provisions due to lack of money) will <i>nourish courage</i> . *prove = find out by experience.6
44	I have a charm in secret to The witchcraft wherewith And free it at my pleasur	h young King James is bound,	43-45: Henry has a secret plan to convince King James to abandon his support for Warbeck. He describes James' belief in the Pretender as being the result of witchcraft.
46	17 V	1.:	
48	Protector of the just.	ise king, sent from Heaven,	
50		dinner cheerfully	
52	Be served in; this day of Our day of providence; f	or Saturday	= ie. it is Saturday. = the day which God made favourable for Henry, ⁵ who
54	Yet never failed in all my To yield me rest at night.	·	won the battles of both Bosworth and Stokes Field on Saturdays. ⁵
56		[A <u>flourish</u> .]	= fanfare of trumpets.
58		- What means this warning?	
60	Good Fate, speak peace t	•	
62	Enter	Lord Dawbney, Earl of Oxford, and Attendants.	Entering Characters: <i>Dawbney</i> and <i>Oxford</i> have returned from doing battle with the rebels.
64	Dawb. Triumphant in the ruin or	Live the king, f his enemies!	

66	Oxf. The head of strong rebellion is cut off,	
68	The body hewed in pieces.	
70	<i>K. Hen.</i> Dawbney, Oxford, Minions to noblest fortunes, how yet stands	= favourites.
72	The comfort of your wishes?	
74	<i>Dawb.</i> Briefly thus:	74-100: Dawbney describes the defeat of the Cornish.
76	The Cornish under Audley, disappointed Of <u>flattered</u> expectation, from the Kentish –	75-76: the Cornish had wrongly expected the citizens of Kent to join them in rebellion. *flattered* = exaggerated.6
78	Your majesty's right-trusty <u>liegemen</u> – <u>flew</u> , <u>Feathered by rage</u> and heartened by presumption, To take the field even at your palace-gates,	= faithful subjects. = fled. 78-79: an interesting metaphor: the <i>feathers</i> enabled the Cornish to <i>fly</i> from Kent to the doorstep of London.
80	And face you in your chamber-royal: arrogance	80-81: <i>arroganceignorance</i> = the rebels' blindness to the reality of their weakness was intensified (<i>Improved</i>) ⁵ by their overconfidence.
82	Improved their ignorance; for they, supposing, Misled by rumour, that the day of battle	81-83: <i>for theyMonday</i> = Henry had tricked the rebels by spreading a rumour that he would attack them on the following Monday, but actually surprising them this day, Saturday.
84	Should fall on Monday, rather <u>braved</u> your forces Than <u>doubted</u> any onset; yet this morning,	83-84: <i>ratheronset</i> = the swaggering Cornish challenged (<i>braved</i>) the royal troops, having never suspected (<i>doubted</i>) that they would be attacked today.
86	When in the dawning I, by your direction, Strove to get Deptford-strand bridge, there I found Such a resistance as might shew what strength	= the Battle of Blackheath (17 June 1497) was also known as the Battle of Deptford Bridge .
88	Could make: here arrows hailed in showers upon us A full yard long at least; but we prevailed.	= the arrows used by the English in their famous longbows measured in the yard range; it may be worth noting that the longbow was retired from military service in 1595, made obsolete by the introduction of firearms. ¹⁹
90	My Lord of Oxford, with his fellow peers Environing the hill, fell fiercely on them	90-91: Oxford's division had been placed on the hills surrounding (<i>environing</i>) Blackheath, trapping the rebels within, while Dawbney's forces faced the rebels directly. The king's division acted as a reserve.
92	On the one side, I on the other, till, great sir, -	
94	Pardon the oversight, – eager of doing Some memorable act, I was engaged	93-94: <i>eager ofact</i> = typical chivalric sentiment: knights and noble warriors sought to perform especially brave acts, which often turned out to be reckless, in that such behavior endangered the whole for the benefit of one.
	Almost a prisoner, but was freed as soon	= the sources tell us that Dawbney had actually been taken prisoner by the rebels during the battle, but then either released or rescued.
96	As sensible of danger: now the fight Began in heat, which quenchèd in the blood of	97-99: <i>which quenchedmercy</i> = 2000 rebels were killed
98	Two thousand rebels, and as many more Reserved to <u>try</u> your mercy, have <u>returned</u>	in battle, and another 2000 were captured, to be brought before Henry for judgment and sentencing.
100	A victory with safety.	<pre>try = test. returned = yielded.5</pre>

102	K. Hen. Have we lost An equal number with them?	
104	Oxf. In the total	
106	Oxf. In the total Scarcely four hundred. Audley, Flammock, Joseph,	= James Touchet, seventh Baron of Audley (1465-1497). Audley's father had served as Lord Treasurer under Richard III. Our Audley accompanied Henry on his brief expedition to France in 1492, where the National Biography suggests he got into debt, thereafter becoming "dissatisfied". He joined the Cornish rebels on their way to London, taking over the leadership.
108	The ringleaders of this commotion, Railed in ropes, fit ornaments for traitors,	108: tied up in a row of ropes, which are appropriate acces-
110	Wait your <u>determinations</u> .	sories for traitors, since they can also be used as nooses. = sentencing. ¹
110	K. Hen. We must pay	
112	Our thanks where they are only due: - O, lords,	= ie. to God and Heaven; <i>only</i> = alone. ⁶
114	Here is no victory, nor shall <u>our people</u> Conceive that we can triumph in their falls.	113-6: Henry has no wish to gloat in a victory over his subjects (<i>our people</i>); in fact, Henry's merciful nature once
116	Alas, poor souls! let such as are escaped Steal to the country back without pursuit:	again comes to the fore, just as it did when he was presented with evidence of Stanley's perfidy.
	There's not a drop of blood spilt but hath drawn	117-8: <i>There's notmine</i> = the king felt the pain of each Englishman killed or wounded in the battle.
118	As much of mine; their swords could have wrought wonders	118-120: <i>their swordsbreasts</i> = the swords of the rebels would have been better served fighting for, and not against,
120	On their king's <u>part</u> , <u>who</u> faintly were unsheathed Against their prince, but wounded their own breasts. –	their king; the result was that they brought harm only upon themselves. part = side. ⁵ who = which.
122	Lords, we are debtors to your care; our payment Shall be both sure and fitting your <u>deserts</u> .	= deservings, merit.
124	<i>Dawb.</i> Sir, will you please to see those rebels, <u>heads</u> Of this wild monster-multitude?	= ie. those who were the leaders.
126	V. Han	
128	K. Hen. Dear friend, My faithful Dawbney, no; on them our justice Must frown in terror; I will not vouchsafe	128-130: <i>noto them</i> = once again Henry does not want to put himself in a position in which he might show mercy on those who deserve death, so he prefers not to come face-to-face with the rebel leaders. *vouchsafe* = deign or allow.
130	An eye of pity to them. Let <u>false</u> Audley	= disloyal.
	Be drawn upon an <u>hurdle</u> from the <u>Newgate</u>	131: <i>hurdle</i> = sledge for carrying prisoners to their executions. *Newgate* = a London prison.
132	To <u>Tower-hill</u> in his own coat of arms	= located near the Tower of London, <i>Tower Hill</i> was the site of many of England's most famous executions.
134	Painted on paper, with the arms reversed, Defaced and torn; there let him lose his head.	134-7: <i>let himthe rest</i> = as a noble, Audley was granted the privilege of being beheaded; hanging was reserved for commoners. Traitors were further punished by quartering,

136	The lawyer and the blacksmith shall be hanged, Quartered; their quarters into Cornwall sent	their bodies literally torn into four parts, each segment then sent out to different districts of England to be displayed as visible warnings to any potentially disgruntled citizens. 130-6: <i>Let falseQuartered</i> = the rebel leaders Audley, Joseph and Flammock were all executed. Bacon describes Audley's humiliation pretty much as Henry describes here. Audley's head, we may add, was posted on London Bridge after his execution.
138	Examples to the rest, whom we are pleased To pardon and dismiss from further quest. –	137-8: <i>whom wequest</i> = Henry is typical of English stage sovereigns, who generally punished the leaders of rebellion,
	My Lord of Oxford, see it done.	while pardoning the masses who followed them, so long as
140		they promised to give up their parts in the insurrection. quest = inquest, ie. official inquiry. Henry granted amnesty to the rebels on 20 June, three
	Oxf. I shall, sir.	days after the battle.
142	K. Hen. Urswick!	
144	Urs. My lord?	
146	•	147 150 Hammanill and out a new yound of him days
148	K. Hen. To <u>Dinham</u> , our high-treasurer, Say, we command commissions be new granted For the collection of our subsidies	147-150: Henry will send out a new round of hired tax- collectors to Cornwall. <i>Dinham</i> was one Lord John Dynham, identified by Hall as Henry's treasurer.
150	Through all the west, and that [right] speedily. – Lords, we acknowledge our <u>engagements</u> due	= obligations. ⁵
152	For your most <u>constant</u> services.	= loyal.
154 156	Dawb. Your soldiers Have manfully and faithfully acquitted Their several duties.	154-6: Dawbney graciously gives credit to the common soldiers of the royal army for performing well.
158	K. Hen. For it we will throw	158-164: <i>For itarms</i> = Henry will reward his troops with
160	A <u>largess</u> free amongst them, which shall hearten And cherish-up their loyalties. More yet Remains of like employment; not a man	a gift of money (a <i>largess</i>), not just for past services, but also to keep them in active service until Warbeck and the Scottish are likewise crushed.
162	Can be dismissed, till enemies abroad,	= ie. Warbeck and the Scottish.
164	More dangerous than these at home, have felt The <u>puissance</u> of our arms. O, happy kings	= force.
	Whose thrones are raised in their subjects' hearts!	20200
166	[Exeunt.]	
	ACT III, SCENE II.	
	Edinburgh.	Come III the seems takes place on the soulding day of
	The Palace.	Scene II: the scene takes place on the wedding day of Warbeck and Lady Katherine.
	Enter Earl of Huntley and Lord Dalyell.	

1	<i>Hunt.</i> Now, sir, a modest word with you, sad gentleman:	1-18: Huntley is bitter, and sarcastically describes the celebratory mood of the wedding festivities.
2	Is not this fine, I <u>trow</u> , to see the <u>gambols</u> ,	= suppose. ¹ = leaps made in dancing. ¹
	To hear the jigs, observe the frisks, b' enchanted	3: <i>jigs</i> = dance music. ¹ frisks = brisk movements made in dancing. ¹ b' enchanted = ie. be enchanted, pronounced in three syllables.
4	With the <u>rare discord</u> of bells, <u>pipes</u> , and <u>tabors</u> , <u>Hotch-potch</u> of Scotch and Irish <u>twingle-twangles</u> ,	= fine disharmony. = ie. bagpipes. = small drums. ¹ = confused mixture. ¹ = sounds of harps. ¹
6	Like to so many quiristers of Bedlam	6: <i>quiristers</i> = choristers, ie. singers. **Bedlam* = nickname for London's Hospital of St. Mary of Bethlehem, the hospital for the insane.
	Trolling a catch! The feasts, the manly stomachs,	= singing a round. ¹ = hearty appetites.
8	The <u>healths</u> in <u>usquebaugh</u> and <u>bonny-clabber</u> ,	8: <i>healths</i> = ie. pledging of good health to others. <i>usquebaugh</i> = whiskey. <i>bonny clabber</i> = sour or curdled buttermilk, an Irish drink. ^{1,12}
10	The ale in <u>dishes</u> never fetched from China, The hundred-thousand <u>knacks</u> not to be spoken of, –	= vessels. ⁵ = delicacies, ^{1,6} tricks, ⁵ or devices. ⁹
	And all this for King Oberon and Queen Mab, –	= the king and queen of the fairies: the image here is of Warbeck and Katherine as imaginary or fanciful royalty. <i>Oberon</i> is a character in <i>A Midsummer's Night Dream</i> , in which his queen is Titania; <i>Mab</i> is mentioned in <i>Romeo and Juliet</i> .
12 14	Should put a soul <u>int 'ee</u> . Look 'ee, good man, How youthful I am grown: but, <u>by your leave</u> , This new queen-bride must henceforth be no more	ie. "into ye", contracted into two syllables.ie. "if you don't mind".ie. "by our lady", an oath.
1.6	My daughter; no, <u>burlady</u> , 'tis unfit:	
16 18	And yet you see how I do bear this change, Methinks courageously: then shake off care In such a time of jollity.	16-18: Huntley tries to convince Dalyell – and perhaps himself – that he is fully able to enjoy the festivities, forgetting all his worries.
20	Daly. Alas, sir, How can you cast a mist upon your griefs?	21: Dalyell wonders how Huntley is able to cover up his distress. The obscuring <i>mist</i> (ie. a cloud), like a pain killer, prevents Huntley from experiencing his dejection.
22	Which, howsoe'er you shadow, but present	22-24: no matter how Huntley tries to conceal (<i>shadow</i>) ¹ his
24	To any judging eye the perfect substance, Of which mine are but counterfeits.	griefs, anyone who knows him can see that his pain is real, while Dalyell generously allows that his own distress, in comparison, is trivial.
26 28	Hunt. Foh, Dalyell! Thou interrupt'st the part I bear in music To this rare bridal-feast; let us be merry,	26-28: <i>Fohbridal-feast</i> = Huntley, perhaps having begun to sing, rebukes Dalyell's attempts to draw him out of his artificial revelry.
30	Whilst flattering calms secure us against storms: Tempests, when they begin to roar, put out The light of peace, and cloud the sun's bright eye	30-32: Huntley modifies Dalyell's metaphor of line 21: it is <i>tempests</i> which obscure the sun, causing distress.

32	In darkness of despair; yet we are safe.	
34 36	Daly. I wish you could as easily forget The justice of your sorrows as my hopes Can yield to destiny.	34-36: Dalyell, sympathetic, hopes that Huntley can genuinely come to terms with his justified sorrow over Katherine's marriage as easily as Dalyell himself has accepted his fate in <i>not</i> marrying her.
38	<i>Hunt.</i> Pish! then I see Thou dost not know the flexible condition	38-44: <i>then I seestraight</i> = Dalyell obviously is not aware of how easy-going Huntley is, to the point where he can laugh, sing and dance, no matter what ails him.
40	Of my apt nature: I can laugh, laugh heartily,	= adaptable. ⁶
42	When the gout cramps my joints; let but the <u>stone</u> Stop in my bladder, I am <u>straight</u> a-singing; The <u>quartan-fever</u> , shrinking every limb,	 = ie. a kidney stone, e.g. = immediately. = a fever which recurs every fourth day (similar to malaria, but malaria wasn't named until c. 1740).¹
44	Sets me <u>a-capering</u> straight; do but betray me, And bind me a friend ever: what! I trust	= a-dancing.
46	The losing of a daughter, though I doted On every hair that grew to <u>trim</u> her head,	= adorn. ⁶
48	Admits not any pain like one of these.	48: cannot cause him distress that is worse than any of the previously mentioned afflictions.
50	Come, th'art deceived in me: give me a blow, A sound blow on the face, I'll thank thee for't; I love my wrongs: still th'art deceived in me.	49: <i>th'artin me</i> = Dalyell is under the misconception that Huntley is suffering. 49-51: <i>give mewrongs</i> = the sense is, Huntley is impervious to pain, and as such, embraces his agonies; he asks Dalyell to strike him in the face to prove it! <i>still</i> = always, continuously.
52		
54 56	Daly. Deceived! O, noble Huntley, my few years Have learnt experience of too ripe an age To forfeit fit credulity: forgive My rudeness, I am bold.	53-55: <i>my fewcredulity</i> = "though I am young, my many experiences, which equal those of older men, have taught me not to believe everything I see so easily." Dalyell is gently telling Huntley he does not believe his act. <i>To forfeit fit credulity</i> = "to lose my capacity to rationally judge what to believe" (Gibson, p. 278). Note the clause's delightful wordplay.
58	Hunt. Forgive me first	
60	A madness of ambition; by example Teach me humility, for patience scorns Lectures, which schoolmen use to read to boys	59-62: by exampleinjuries = Huntley asks Dalyell to show him by example how to handle his emotional torment, rather than lecture him, as if he were a schoolboy. use = are accustomed. ⁶
62	Uncapable of injuries: though old,	C2 (C. if he wells would be Houston and in greatest and
64	I could grow tough in fury, and disclaim Allegiance to my king; could fall at odds	63-66: if he really wanted to, Huntley could, in protest over the wedding, turn against his king, and pick a fight with all those nobles – his so-called friends – who, fearing to contradict James, allowed Huntley to suffer this humiliation. *tough* = perhaps "violent".6
	With all my fellow-peers that <u>durst</u> not stand	= dared.
66	Defendants 'gainst the rape done on mine honour: But kings are earthly gods, there is no meddling	= defenders.
68	With their anointed bodies; for their actions They only are accountable to Heaven.	
70	Yet in the puzzle of my troubled brain One antidote's reserved against the poison	71-72: Huntley sees one way out of his agony, if only

72	Of my distractions; 'tis in thee t' apply it.	Dalyell will help him!
74	Daly. Name it; O, name it quickly, sir!	distractions = temporary madness.
76	Hunt. A pardon	76-81: Huntley feels he has let Dalyell down by failing to manage things better so that the young noble could have married Katherine.
	For my most foolish <u>slighting thy deserts</u> ;	= devaluing Dalyell's merit, ie. not having previously recognized that the young man is fully worthy of Katherine.
78	I have <u>culled out this time</u> to beg it: <u>preethee</u> , Be <u>gentle</u> ; had I been so, thou hadst owned	= carefully chosen this moment. = prithee, ie. please. = generous. ⁶
80 82	A happy bride, but now a castaway, And never child of mine more.	
84	Daly. Say not so, sir; It is not fault in her.	
86	Hunt. The world would <u>prate</u> How she was <u>handsome</u> ; young I know she was,	= chatter pointlessly. = attractive.
88	Tender, and sweet in her obedience: But lost now: what a bankrupt am I made	- attractive.
90	Of a full stock of blessings! Must I hope A mercy from thy heart?	90: Of = from. full stock = full stock concludes a brief commercial
92	Daly. A love, a service,	metaphor with <i>bankrupt</i> .
94	A friendship to posterity.	94: a friendship that will be famous in future times. ⁵
96 98	Hunt. Good angels Reward thy charity! I have no more But prayers left me now.	
100	Daly. I'll lend you mirth, sir, If you will be in consort.	= ie. "join with me," ⁹ or "be in agreement." ⁵
102	<i>Hunt.</i> Thank ye truly:	
104	I must; yes, yes, I must; – here's yet some ease, A partner in affliction: look not angry.	104-5: <i>here's yetaffliction</i> = the notion that misery loves company is an old one!
106	Daly. Good, noble sir!	
108	[Flourish.]	
110	Hunt. O, hark! we may be quiet,	= must.
112	The King and all the others come; a meeting Of gaudy sights: this day's the last of revels;	= brilliant, festive. ²
114	To-morrow sounds of war; then new exchange: Fiddles must turn to swords. — Unhappy marriage!	= a perversion of Isaiah 2:4's "they shall beat their swords
116	[A flourish.]	into plowshares" (KJV).
118 120	Enter King James, Perkin Warbeck leading Lady Katherine, Earl of Crawford and his Countess; Jane, and other Ladies.	
122	Earl of Huntley and Lord Dalyell fall in among them.	
124	K. Ja. Cousin of York, you and your princely bride	

126	Have liberally enjoyed such soft delights As a new-married couple could <u>forethink;</u>	= anticipate. ⁵
128	Nor has our bounty shortened expectation: But after all those pleasures of repose,	127: the sense of the line is "nor have I short-changed you of what you would expect with respect to my generosity."
130	Of amorous safety, we must rouse the ease Of dalliance with achievements of more glory	
132	Than <u>sloath</u> and sleep can furnish: yet, for farewell, Gladly we entertain a truce with time,	= ie. sloth, a common alternate form.
134	To grace the joint endeavours of our servants.	
136	<i>Warb.</i> My royal cousin, in your princely favour The extent of bounty hath been so unlimited,	= pronounce as <i>Th' extant</i> .
138	As only an acknowledgment in words Would breed suspicion in our state and quality.	137-8: "that if I were to only thank you with words, it would raise suspicion whether I truly am who I say I am."
	When we shall, in the fulness of our fate, –	139-141: <i>When wethrone</i> = ie. "when I am king of England".
140	Whose minister, necessity, will pérfit, –	140: ie. personified <i>Necessity</i> will assist personified <i>Fate</i> . minister = agent. perfit = perfect.
142	Sit on our own throne; then <u>our</u> arms, laid open	= ie. "my".
144	To gratitude, in sacred memory Of these large benefits, shall twine them close,	= "embrace them tightly".
	Even to our thoughts and heart, without distinction. Then James and Richard, being in effect	
146 148	One person, shall unite and rule one people, Divisible in titles only.	141-7: James' Generous Nature: actually, James did not support Warbeck solely out of the goodness of his heart, nor were Warbeck's promises to pay James back so general: Warbeck actually signed a contract that promised to deliver the town of Berwick and pay James 50,000 marks, should he successfully take the throne of England.
150	<i>K. Ja.</i> Seat ye. – Are the <u>presenters</u> ready?	= performers.
152	Craw. All are entering.	
154	<i>Hunt.</i> Dainty sport toward, Dalyell! sit; come, sit, Sit and be quiet; here are kingly bug's-words!	= "delightful entertainment is at hand". 1,5 = high-sounding or inflated language as would be expected in a royal performance; 5,6 the masque, however, is without speech, as is normal.
156 158	Enter at one door Four Scotch <u>Antics</u> , <u>accordingly</u> <u>habited</u> ; at another, Warbeck's followers,	= ludicrous-acting performers. ¹ = appropriately. = dressed.
160	disguised as <u>Four Wild Irish</u> in <u>trowses,</u> long-haired, and accordingly habited.	159: <i>Four Wild Irish</i> = in Elizabethan drama, Ireland was frequently stereotyped as being populated by savages. <i>trowses</i> = ie. <i>trousers</i> , which seem to have been a traditional part of Irish dress since ancient times. The word <i>trousers</i> itself is derived from the Irish <i>trius</i> or <i>trews</i> . 10
162	Music. A dance by the Masquers.	162: there is a pause in the action here for both court and theatre audiences to enjoy the dancing of the masquers, which are comprised of the four Scots and Warbeck's advisors.

164	K. Ja. To all a general thanks!	
166 168	Warb. In the next room Take your own shapes again; you shall receive Particular acknowledgment.	= "change back into your regular clothes". 168: ie. individual gifts of money.
170	[Exeunt the Masquers.]	
172	K. Ja. Enough	
174	Of merriments. – Crawford, how far's our army Upon the march?	
176	<i>Craw.</i> At <u>Hedon-hall</u> , great king; Twelve thousand, well-prepared.	= building located near Duns, Berwick County, in the Scottish Borders, in far south-east Scotland. 15
178	• •	Scottish Bordors, in the south cust scottand.
180	<u>Post thither</u> . We in person, with the prince,	= "get down there quickly!"
182	By four o'clock to-morrow after dinner Will be w'ee; speed away!	= ie. "with ye".
184	Craw. I fly, my lord.	
186	[Exit.]	
188	K. Ja. Our business grows to head now: where's your secretary,	= is reaching a critical point. = ie. Frion.
190	That he attends 'ee not to serve?	189: ie. "who is not by your side where he should be?".
192	Warb. With Marchmont, Your herald.	= Marchmont was a title used to designate the Scottish Herald of Arms; Marchmont serves as a messenger for James.
194	K. Ja. Good: the proclamation's ready;	194-6: <i>the proclamationstitle</i> = proclamations were issued, intended to be read or heard by the subjects of
196	By that it will appear how the English stand Affected to your title. – Huntley, comfort	England, announcing the arrival of the true king. James suggests these will give them an idea how receptive the English will be to Warbeck's claim. the English = pronounced as th' English, in two syllables.
198	Your daughter in her husband's absence; fight With prayers at home for us, who for your honours	lautes.
200	Must toil in fight abroad.	
202	Hunt. Prayers are the weapons Which men so near their graves as I do use; I've little else to do.	201-3: Lord Huntley, both here and later, will comment on his own great age; but he would have only been about 55 years of age at this time.
204	K. Ja. To rest, young beauties! –	= ie. to bed.
206	We must be early stirring; quickly part: "A kingdom's rescue craves both speed and art." —	206-7: a rhyming couplet ends James' part in this scene. = ie. Warbeck's kingdom, England. = skill or cunning.
208	Cousins, good-night.	- 10. Walbeek 5 kingdom, England 5kin of cullining.
210	[A flourish.]	
212	Warb. Rest to our cousin-king.	
214	Kath. Your blessing, sir.	

216	Hunt. Fair blessings on your highness! sure, you need 'em.	= surely.
218	[Exeunt all but Warbeck, Lady Katherine, and Jane.]	
220	<i>Warb.</i> Jane, set the lights down, and from us <u>return</u> To <u>those in the next room</u> this little purse;	= ie. give. = ie. the masquers.
222	Say we'll deserve their loves.	
224	Jane. It shall be done, sir.	
226	[Exit Jane.]	
228	<i>Warb.</i> Now, dearest, ere sweet sleep shall seal those eyes, Love's precious <u>tapers</u> , give me <u>leave</u> to use	= before; note the line's lovely alliteration.= lights. = permission.
230	A parting ceremony; for to-morrow It would be sacrilege to intrude upon	231-2: <i>to intrudepeace</i> = ie. "to wake you up."
222	•	to intrude = pronounce as t' intrude, in two syllables.
232	The temple of thy peace: swift as the morning Must I break from the <u>down</u> of thy embraces,	= the first feathering, or soft covering, of a bird. ¹
234	To put on steel, and trace the paths which lead	= ie. armour. = walk.
236	Through various hazards to a <u>careful</u> throne.	= ie. accompanied by anxiety. ¹
	<i>Kath.</i> My lord, I would fain go w'ee; there's small fortune	237: would fain go w'ee = "would be happy to or like to go with ye."
238	In staying here behind.	237-8: <i>there's smallbehind</i> = Katherine suggests there is nothing for her to gain in being separated from Warbeck.
240	Warb. The <u>churlish</u> brow	= harsh, rough. 1
242	Of war, fair dearest, is a sight of horror For ladies' entertainment: if thou hear'st A truth of my sad ending by the hand	242-3: <i>if thouending</i> = ie. "if you hear that I was killed".
244	Of some <u>unnatural subject</u> , thou <u>withal</u>	244: <i>unnatural subject</i> = <i>unnatural</i> is used typically to refer to one without the normal close feelings associated with those in familial relationships; used by extension here to refer to an English <i>subject</i> who <i>unnaturally</i> fights against his own king – who is, in this case, Warbeck, of course. **withal* = additionally.
246	Shalt hear how I died worthy of my right, By falling like a king; and in the close,	= "in the final musical phrase", ^{1,6} a metaphor with <i>sing</i> in
248	Which my last breath shall sound, thy name, thou fairest, Shalt sing a requiem to my soul, unwilling	line 248.
250	Only of greater glory, <u>'cause divided</u> From such a Heaven on earth as life with thee.	= ie. "because it means I will be separated".
	But these are chimes for funerals: my business	251-2: Warbeck recognizes that he is harping on his
252	Attends on fortune of a sprightlier triumph;	hypothetical death, when he is very much alive, and is enthusiastically about to enter the game! chimes = tolling of a church bell. ⁶
254	For love and majesty are reconciled, And vow to crown thee empress of the west.	
256	<i>Kath.</i> You have a noble language, sir; your right	256-7: <i>your rightquestion</i> = recalling Warbeck's use of the word <i>right</i> in line 245 above, Katherine seems to be: (1) assuring her husband that she is without doubt that he is indeed the young prince, and the rightful heir to the English throne; but perhaps also (2) confirming that his interest in her personally (as his wife) is undisputed, regardless of his identity, or what

		happens to him.
258	In me is without question, and however Events of time may shorten my <u>deserts</u> <u>In others'</u> pity, yet it shall not <u>stagger</u>	257-260: <i>howevera wife</i> = "should events turn out badly, such that I get no pity from others, my fidelity to you will not diminish in the slightest."
260	Or constancy or duty in a wife.	<pre>deserts = deservings. In others' = of others'. stagger = cause to waver.¹</pre>
262	You must be king of me; and my poor heart Is all I can call mine.	<i>Oror</i> (line 260) = eitheror.
264	Warb. But we will live, Live, beauteous virtue, by the lively test	265-6: <i>by theblood</i> = "by the living proof of my own royal blood". ⁶
266	Of our own blood, to let the counterfeit Be known the world's contempt.	266-7: <i>to letcontempt</i> = Warbeck is confident that his victory will prove to the world that he is the true King of England, while Henry, the real fraud, will become an object of scorn.
268		
270	Kath.Pray, do not useThat word; it carries fate in't. The first suitI ever made, I trust your love will grant.	= please.= ie. counterfeit. = request or favour.= ie. to Warbeck.
272	Warb. Without denial, dearest.	
274	<i>Kath.</i> That hereafter,	
276278	If you return with safety, no adventure May sever us in tasting any fortune: I ne'er can stay behind again.	
280 282	Warb. Y'are <u>lady</u> Of your desires, and shall command your will; Yet 'tis too hard to promise.	= mistress. ⁶
284	Kath. What our destinies	284-6: the couple must accept the fact that there are certain
286	Have ruled-out in their books we must not search, But kneel to.	things which the book of fate will not give them.
288	Warb. Then to fear when hope is fruitless,	288-291: <i>Then tostoop to</i> = to be afraid when events have turned hopelessly against you is to be truly wretched; but
290	Were to be desperately miserable; Which <u>poverty</u> our greatness dares not dream of, And much more scorns to stoop to: some few minutes	in fact, Warbeck's pride disdains to allow him to think in this fashion. The Pretender's broad point is, that he must remain optimistic. *poverty* = ie. poverty of spirit.
292	Remain yet; let's be thrifty in our hopes.	= prosperous. ^{1,6}
294	[Exeunt.]	
	ACT III, SCENE III.	
		Soone III. The international geometric method complicated
	Westminster. The Palace.	Scene III: The international scene was rather complicated at this time, but many of Western Europe's major powers

1 **K. Hen.** Your name is Pedro Hialas, a Spaniard? 2 *Hial.* Sir, a Castilian born. 4 K. Hen. King Ferdinand, 6 With wise Queen Isabel his royal consort, Write 'ee a man of worthy trust and candour. 8 Princes are dear to Heaven who meet with subjects Sincere in their employments; such I find 10 Your commendation, sir. Let me deliver How joyful I repute the amity 12 With your most fortunate master, who almost Comes near a miracle in his success 14 Against the Moors, who had devoured his country, Entire now to his sceptre. We, for our part, Will imitate his providence, in hope 16 Of partage in the use on't: we repute 18 The privacy of his advisement to us By you, intended an ambassador 20 To Scotland, for a peace between our kingdoms, A policy of love, which well becomes

22

His wisdom and our care.

Enter King Henry, Hialas, and Urswick.

took a great interest in the outcome of Warbeck's claims to the throne: France having invaded Italy, Spain, Venice and the Holy Roman Emperor were in the process of forming a league to oppose the French, and were anxious for Henry's support. Additionally, the Spanish monarchs, famous Ferdinand and Isabella, were negotiating to have their daughter Katherine of Aragon marry Henry's elder son Prince Arthur. Thus, the security of Henry's throne was of paramount interest to them.

At the same time as the Scottish were invading northern England, Spain sent an ambassador to James, one **Pedro de Ayala** (our Hialas), to try to convince James to abandon Warbeck and make peace with Henry. Ford has Ayala meeting with Henry first, but Ayala actually sailed directly to Scotland from Spain.

Entering Characters: *King Henry* has had the good fortune to receive in his court *Hialas*, a Spanish envoy, who is on his way to Scotland to help bring peace between Spain and England. Henry naturally sees fit to help Hialas in his mission.

= **Ferdinand**, the heir to the throne of **Aragon**, married **Isabella**, the heiress to the **Castilian** throne, in 1469; Isabella became queen in 1474, and when Ferdinand became King of Aragon at his father's passing in 1479, the famous royal couple united, for the first time, under one government the lands now known as Spain.⁸

Hialas, as a point of pride, identifies himself to Henry as specifically *Castilian*, rather than by the broader term of *Spanish*.

- = "describes you in writing as".
- 8-9: *Princes...employments* = "a king must surely be loved by Heaven if it provides him with such trustworthy subjects."
- = express.⁶
- 11-12: *How joyful...master* = Henry is pleased to be friends with the great Spanish monarch! *repute* = regard.¹
- 12-14: *who almost...country* = the *Moors* had ruled the Iberian Peninsula since the 8th century. The reconquest of Spain was completed by Ferdinand and Isabella in 1492.⁸
- = Ferdinand is now sole master of all of Spain.
- = foresight, management or government of affairs. 1,6,9
- 17: *of partage...on't* = sharing in its benefit.^{1,2,5}
 17-22: *we repute...our care* = "I attribute (*repute*)¹
 Ferdinand's sending you, his envoy, to me in secret first (before you go to Scotland) to be a result of his genuine concern for my well-being."

24	<i>Hial.</i> Your majesty Doth understand him rightly.	
26 28	K. Hen. Else Your knowledge can instruct me; wherein, sir,	27-28: <i>Elseinstruct me</i> = ie. "if I am wrong in any way, you may correct me."
30	To fall on ceremony would seem useless, Which shall not need; for I will be as studious	29-30: <i>To fallnot need</i> = Henry basically suggests that they skip the formalities normally accompanying the arrival of the representative of an important country (due to the secret nature of Hialas' visit).
32	Of your concealment in our <u>conference</u> As any council shall advise.	= meeting or conferring; Hialas' visit to England will be kept confidential.
343638	Hial. Then, sir, My chief request is, that on notice given At my dispatch in Scotland, you will send Some learned man of power and experience To join entreaty with me.	35-36: <i>that onScotland</i> = when Henry next receives a message from Hialas from Scotland. = negotiations. ¹
40 42	K. Hen. I shall do it, Being that way well provided by a servant Which may attend 'ee ever.	40-42: Henry has a man in mind for the job – the Bishop of Durham, who has already been posted to northern England.
44	<i>Hial.</i> If King James, By any <u>indirection</u> , should <u>perceive</u>	= roundabout way. = hear of.
46	My coming near your court, I doubt the <u>issue</u> Of my employment.	= outcome, ie. success; despite Henry's assurances, Hialas is still concerned that James might learn of his visit to the English monarch. 44-47: Pickburn sees Hialas here as hinting to Henry that he deserves a reward for taking on so dangerous a mission, which will inure to Henry's benefit.
48 50	K. Hen. Be not your own herald: I learn sometimes without a teacher.	49-50: Henry is mildly sarcastic: he doesn't need to be told the obvious.
52	Hial. Good days Guard all your princely thoughts!	52-53: the subtle Hialas recognizes that Henry has picked up on his hint!
54 56	K. Hen. Urswick, no further Than the next open gallery attend him. – A hearty love go with you!	55-56: Urswick has already been given instructions to provide Hialas everything he needs for his errand, including giving him money. gallery = corridor. 1
58	Hial. Your vowed <u>beadsman</u> .	59: the sense is, "your humble servant." beadsman = literally, one who is paid to pray for another. 11
60	[Exeunt Urswick and Hialas.]	61: as Hialas is leaving, he mutters something to Urswick, which Henry hears but cannot make out.
62 64	K. Hen. King Ferdinand is not so much a fox, But that a cunning huntsman may in time	63-66: with this fabulous hunting metaphor, Henry points out that he is very well aware that Ferdinand, the crafty <i>fox</i> , has other metives in mind for conding Hieles to see him but
66	Fall on the scent: in honourable actions Safe imitation best deserves a praise.	has other motives in mind for sending Hialas to see him; but since the Spaniard's mission tends towards Henry's benefit anyway, it is best for Henry (the <i>cunning huntsman</i>) to play along.

68	Re-enter Urswick.	68: Urswick has prepared and sent out Hialas on his mission to King James, including his reward for services to the English crown. Note the compression of time: Urswick did all this in the time it took Henry to speak 4 lines.
70	What, the Castilian's passed away?	= departed. ¹
72	Urs. He is, And <u>undiscovered</u> ; the two hundred <u>marks</u>	73: <i>undiscovered</i> = unrevealed, ie. secretly. <i>marks</i> = a <i>mark</i> was a unit of currency, valued at 2/3 of a pound stirling. ¹
74	Your majesty conveyed, 'a gently <u>pursed</u> With a right modest gravity.	= pocketed. ⁶
76	K. Hen. What was't	
78	'A muttered in the <u>earnest</u> of his wisdom? 'A spoke not to be heard; 'twas about –	= gravity or seriousness, but Anderson sees a pun on earnest's alternate meaning of "down-payment".
80	Urs. Warbeck:	
82 84	How if King Henry were but sure of subjects, Such a wild <u>runagate</u> might soon be caged, No great ado withstanding.	= wanderer or itinerant person. ¹ 84: "there being no serious opposition." ⁵
86	K. Hen. Nay, nay; something	86-87: Henry is cagey: he heard more than he first let on!
88	About my son Prince Arthur's <u>match</u> .	= marriage.
90	Urs. Right, right, sir: He hummed it out, how that King Ferdinand Swore that the marriage 'twixt the Lady Katherine	89: Urswick must recover: "oh, yes, I almost forgot" = murmured. ¹
92	His daughter and the Prince of Wales your son	= ie. Henry's first-born son, Arthur . The Spanish monarchs had been tentatively planning for the marriage of their daughter Katherine to Henry VII's eldest son Arthur (1486-1502) since 1488 as a way to cement the two countries' relationship. There is evidence, however, that Ferdinand and Isabella worried about how secure Henry's regime was; after all, he himself had overthrown the previous king (Richard III) after the latter had only reigned three years; the rise of pretenders concerned them, as did the existence of Richard's nephew <i>Edward</i> , <i>Earl of Warwick</i> , on behalf of whom his Yorkist supporters might also make a claim to the throne. This latter worry on the part of the royal couple is expressed more explicitly in this speech.
94	Should never be consummated as long As any <u>Earl of Warwick</u> lived in England,	= see the note at the end of this speech.
96	Except by new creation.	95: a hint that the Spanish would like to see Edward dead before allowing Katherine to marry Arthur: if Edward were dispatched, then the only way any Earl of Warwick could exist would be if Henry invested someone new with that title! Note how Hialas has dropped the hint regarding the delicate matter of the fate of the Earl of Warwick to Urswick, rather than to Henry directly.
		Edward, Earl of Warwick (1475-1499): Edward was the only surviving son of George, Earl of Clarence (Clarence was the brother of Edward IV and Richard III), who was

	K. Hen. I remember	After Richard usurped the throne in 1483, young Edward, now an orphan (his mother had died when Edward was an infant), was at first treated well by the new king; but when Richard's own son and heir died, he named John de la Pole, his nephew and the Earl of Lincoln, his heir, and confined Edward to Sheriff Hutton Castle in North Yorkshire. After Henry defeated Richard at the Battle of Bosworth (1485), Henry, now king, moved Edward to the Tower, where he remained for the rest of his life; he only left the Tower one day, when the Pretender Lambert Simnel, who was impersonating Edward, was crowned king in Ireland: Edward was paraded through the streets of London and allowed to attend mass at St. Paul's, so that the English could see the true Earl of Warwick was still alive and in prison. The injustice of his treatment did not escape notice during those years.
98	Twas so, indeed: the king his master swore it?	
100	Urs. Directly, as he said.	= precisely. ^{1,9}
102	K. Hen. An Earl of Warwick! – Provide a messenger for letters instantly	103-5: Henry recognizes the urgency now with which James must be convinced to abandon his support for Warbeck.
104	To Bishop Fox. Our news from Scotland creeps;	104: <i>Bishop Fox</i> = the Bishop of Durham had been sent
106	It comes so slow, we must have <u>airy spirits;</u> Our time requires <u>dispatch</u> . –	north to secure the border castle of Norham against the expected incursion by the Scottish. 104-6: <i>Our newsdispatch</i> = ie. the news from Scotland arrives too slowly: incorporeal flying messengers (<i>airy spirits</i>) would be preferable to those that wend so frustratingly slowly by land! <i>dispatch</i> = speed. ¹
	[Aside] The Earl of Warwick!	107-9: <i>The EarlEdward!</i> = according to Bacon, Henry began to consider executing the earl and laying the blame on the Spanish monarchs.
108	Let him be son to Clarence, younger brother	108-110: <i>Let himArthur</i> = according to Gibson, Henry
110	To Edward! Edward's daughter is, I think, Mother to our Prince Arthur. – Get a messenger.	here is trying to convince himself of the superiority of his son Arthur's claim to the throne: Clarence, as nephew to Edward IV, perhaps had a better claim, since Arthur is descended from Edward through his daughter, Elizabeth of York, a female.
112	[Exeunt.] ACT III, SCENE IV.	
	Northern England: before the Castle of Norham.	Scene IV: James' army is besieging Norham Castle. Ford conflates history in this scene: in mid-September 1496, James led the Scottish, with Warbeck present, into northern England for a very brief raid; it was later, after he had expelled Warbeck from Scotland, that James invaded

killed in the Tower in 1478 (accused of treason against his brother King Edward IV), possibly at the instigation of Richard.

ĺ		England a second time, investing Norham Castle in August
		1497. The siege portrayed in this scene is a combination of
		the two invasions.
		The Scottish used their famous 15,000-pound cannon,
		Mons Meg, at Norham Castle; this monster can still be seen at Edinburgh Castle.
	Enter King James, Perkin Warbeck, Earl of	ai Eunourgh Casite.
	Crawford, Lord Dalyell, Heron, Astley,	
	John A-Water, Sketon, and Soldiers.	
1	K. Ja. We <u>trifle</u> time against these castle-walls;	= waste.
2	The English prelate will not <u>yield</u> : once more	2-3: the Bishop of Durham, Richard Foxe, is inside the castle, managing its defense.
		yield = surrender.
	Give him a summons.	3: it was customary before battles of the era for the opposing
		sides to send heralds to each other, demanding surrender and offering conditions.
4		and offering conditions.
·	[A parley is sounded.]	= a trumpet or drum sounds for the purpose of requesting a
		meeting between the opposing sides.
6	Endow on the smallest the District of Doubour	Entering Characters: the English defenders appear on the
8	Enter on the <u>walls</u> the Bishop of Durham, armed, a <u>truncheon</u> in his hand, with Soldiers.	stage's rear balcony, which was frequently used to represent
· ·	armea, a <u>trancheon</u> in his hana, with Solaters.	city or castle walls.
		<i>truncheon</i> = commander's baton.
10	Warb. See, the jolly <u>clerk</u>	10-11: Warbeck mocks the bishop for playing soldier.
10	warb. See, the jony cierk	clerk = clergyman. ¹
	Appears, trimmed like a ruffian!	= dressed ² or armed. ⁹ = lawless villain. ¹
12		
	K. Ja. Bishop, yet	
14	Set ope the ports, and to your lawful sovereign,	= "open the castle gates".
16	Richard of York, surrender up this castle, And he will take thee to his grace; else Tweed	= ie. Warbeck. = Norham Castle is located on the <i>River Tweed</i> , the tradi-
10	And he will take thee to his grace, else I weed	tional eastern boundary between England and Scotland.
	Shall overflow his banks with English blood,	, and a second s
18	And wash the sand that <u>céments</u> those hard stones	= <i>cement</i> was stressed on its first syllable in this era.
	From their foundation.	
20	D (D W 1:1 W: CG (1 1	21 ff and how the maintaill Dark and address the found
	B. of Dur. Warlike King of Scotland,	21 <i>ff</i> : note how at no point will Durham address the fraud Warbeck directly.
22	Vouchsafe a few words from a man enforced	= permit.
	To lay his book aside, and clap on arms	= ie. Bible.
24	Unsuitable to my age or my profession.	= Durham would have been about 48 years old.
	Courageous prince, consider on what grounds	
26	You <u>rend</u> the face of peace, and break <u>a league</u>	= tear, scratch. = an alliance.
20	With a confederate king that courts your amity,	= ie. Henry. = "seeks to win your friendship".
28	For whom, too? for a vagabond, a straggler,	
30	Not noted in the world by birth or name, An obscure peasant, by the rage of hell	
30	Loosed from his chains to set great kings at strife.	= set loose, released.
	nom institution to set great kings at suite.	
32	What nobleman, what common man of note,	32-35: <i>What noblemanwelcome</i> = Durham points out
	What ordinary subject hath come in,	that not a single Englishman or woman has appeared to give
34	Since first you footed on our territories,	even a sham welcome to Warbeck.
	To only feign a welcome? Children laugh at	

36	Your proclamations, and the wiser pity	= ie. wiser people.
	So great a potentate's <u>abuse</u> by one	37: <i>abuse</i> = ill-usage. ¹ 37-38: <i>onemerely</i> = "one who deceives (<i>juggles</i>) you completely".
38	Who juggles merely with the <u>fawns</u> and youth Of an <u>instructed compliment</u> : such spoils,	= servile treatment or favouring. ¹ = ie. Warbeck had to be taught how to behave in a princely
40	Such slaughters as the rapine of your soldiers Already have committed, is enough	manner.
42	To shew your zeal <u>in a conceited justice</u> .	42: "to demonstrate your enthusiasm for what you imagine to be a just cause" (Gibson, p. 289).6
44	Yet, great king, wake not yet my master's vengeance But shake <u>that viper</u> off which gnaws your entrails. I and my fellow-subjects are resolved,	= ie. Warbeck.
46	If you persist, to stand your utmost fury, Till our last blood drop from us.	
48	Warb. O, sir, lend	
50	No ear to this traducer of my honour! –	= the quarto prints "Me ear to this seducer", which all the editors emend as shown; traducer = slanderer. ²
	What shall I call thee, thou gray-bearded scandal,	= Warbeck's use of <i>thee</i> to address the bishop is consistent with how a king would address any of his subjects; but he also uses it as a way to show contempt.
52	That kick'st against the sovereignty to which Thou ow'st allegiance? – Treason is bold-faced	= meaning allegiance to himself, the legitimate king.
54	And eloquent in mischief: sacred king, Be deaf to his known malice.	
56	D of Dome IT I Dodhoo o'ald	576 Dudous income Westerd
58	B. of Dur. [To James] Rather yield Unto those holy motions which inspire	57f: Durham ignores Warbeck. = impulses. ²
60	The sacred heart of an <u>anointed</u> body. It is the <u>surest</u> policy in princes	= monarchs were <i>anointed</i> with holy oil at their coronations. = safest, ie. best.
62	To govern well their own than seek encroachment Upon another's right.	
		63: James likely falls into a meditative pose at this point, with a short pause in dialogue.
64	Craw. [Aside to Dalyell] The king is serious, Deep in his meditations.	
66	Daly. [Aside to Crawford] Lift them up	= ie. James' thoughts.
68	To Heaven, his better genius!	= ie. similar to a "better angel".
70	Warb. [To James] Can you study While such a devil raves? O, sir!	= ponder.
72	K. Ja. Well, bishop,	
74	K. Ja. Well, bishop, You'll not be drawn to mercy?	74: persuaded to surrender himself to James' mercy.
76	B. of Dur. Conster me In like case by a subject of your own:	76-77: "judge my actions by how you would expect one of your own subjects to behave in my situation." **Conster* = construe*, a common alternate form.
78	My resolution's fixed: King James, be <u>counselled</u> , A greater fate waits on thee.	= advised. 79: the bishop hints that James has a brighter future in store

80		if he abandons the fraud Warbeck.
82	[Exeunt Bishop of Durham and Soldiers from the walls.]	
84	K. Ja. Forage through The country; spare no prey of life or goods.	
86 88	<i>Warb.</i> O, sir, then give me leave to yield to nature; I am most miserable: had I been	87: Anderson believes Warbeck may begin to weep here. 88-90: <i>had Ibelief with</i> = ie. "if I really was what the bishop says I am".
90	Born what this clergyman would by <u>defame</u> <u>Baffle</u> belief with, I <u>had never</u> sought The truth of mine inheritance with rapes	= defamation, slander. = confound. = ie. would never have.
92	Of women or of infants murthered, virgins Deflowered, old men butchered, dwellings fired,	= burned.
94	My land depopulated, and my people Afflicted with a kingdom's devastation:	
96	Shew more <u>remorse</u> , great king, or I shall never Endure to see such havoc with dry eyes;	= consideration, pity or regret. ¹
98	Spare, spare, my dear, dear England!	87-98: the first Scottish raid inflicted a great deal of violence on the English countryside; supposedly, Warbeck expressed regret over this harsh behavior, and begged the king to limit any further suffering on the English populace. This attitude was considered unprincely, and the chroniclers mocked him viciously for this.
		100-7 (below): annoyed, James embarrasses Warbeck by pointing out that not a single Englishman has turned out in his support. His sarcasm is quite a sudden reversal from the deference shown him to this point.
100	K. Ja. You fool your piety Ridiculously careful of an interest	100-2: <i>You foolpossesseth</i> = Warbeck is making an ass of himself, solicitous as he is for the welfare of (<i>careful of</i>) a land that belongs to someone else! fool your piety = "make your own compassion look foolish". ⁵
102	Another man possesseth. Where's your <u>faction</u> ? Shrewdly the bishop guessed of your adherents,	= supporting part of the population. 103: "the smart bishop has correctly calculated your level
104	When not a petty <u>burgess</u> of some town, No, not a villager hath yet appeared	of support." = elected official; but can also mean "citizen". ¹
106	In your assistance: that should make 'ee whine, And not your country's sufferance, as you term it.	106-7: <i>that shouldterm it</i> = "you should be complaining about the fact that not one Englishman has joined your side,
108	7 ma not your country's <u>surretance</u> , as you <u>term</u> it.	rather than about the suffering of your country, as you call (<i>term</i>) it." James' use of <i>whine</i> expresses his disdain. sufferance = suffering.
110	Daly. The king is angry.	5-4 ,
112	<i>Craw.</i> And the <u>passionate</u> duke Effeminately dolent.	 = emotional. 112: grieving or mourning in an unmanly manner; they don't think much of Warbeck's sympathy for the English victims of the raid.
114	Warb. The experience	ams of the faid.
116	In former trials, sir, both of mine own Or other princes cast out of their thrones, Have so acquainted me how misery	

118	Is destitute of friends or of relief,	
120	That I can easily submit to taste <u>Lowest reproof</u> without contempt or words.	119-120: Warbeck means that he is easily able to stand even the most insulting rebuke (<i>Lowest reproof</i>) without responding in kind.
122	K. Ja. An humble-minded man!	120: James is highly sarcastic.
124	Enter Frion.	
126	Now, what <u>intelligence</u> Speaks Master Secretary Frion?	= news.
128	<i>Frion</i> . Henry	
130 132	Of England hath in open field o'erthrown The armies who opposed him in the right Of this young prince.	= ie. the Cornish rebels.
	, ,,	
134	K. Ja. <u>His subsidies</u> , you mean: –	= ie. further sarcasm: "(who opposed) his subsidies"; James correctly surmises that the Cornish did not rise up in order to support Warbeck, but rather to show their displeasure at the heavy taxes Henry had imposed on them.
136	More, if you have it?	135: "what other news do you have?"
138	Frion. Howard, Earl of Surrey, Backed by twelve earls and barons of the north, An hundred knights and gentlemen of name,	
140	And twenty thousand soldiers, is at hand	
	To raise your siege. <u>Brooke</u> , with a goodly navy,	= Brooke is Sir Robert Willoughby, the first Baron Willoughby de Broke (1452-1502). Willoughby probably fought with Henry at Bosworth, and subsequently served under the king in various capacities, including Admiral of the Fleet beginning in 1490. He was in command of the fleet when news arrived in London that Warbeck was threatening the coast of Cornwall.
142	Is admiral at sea; and Dawbney follows With an <u>unbroken army for a second</u> .	= a wholly intact. ¹ = in support.
144	<i>Warb</i> . Tis false! they come to side with us.	
146 148	<i>K. Ja.</i> Retreat; We shall not find them stones and walls to cope with. –	147<i>f</i>: James realizes the hopelessness of their situation.148: ie. "fighting these armies would be more difficult than taking on the stones of a castle in a siege."
	Yet, Duke of York, for such thou sayst thou art,	= Wow! James sneeringly switches pronouns, no longer using the respectful <i>you</i> towards Warbeck.
150	I'll try thy fortune to the height: to Surrey,	150: <i>I'll tryheight</i> = "I will test your luck to the utmost degree that I can".
	By Marchmont, I will send a brave defiance	= ie. James' herald or messenger. = challenge.
152	For single combat; once a king will venture	152: <i>For single combat</i> = James will challenge Surrey to fight one-on-one to determine the winner of the campaign — an old chivalric notion. But James isn't crazy; he knows his army can't win a stand-up fight against the English; but if he wins the single combat, he can get something for Scotland for his troubles (see Act IV.i.45 <i>f</i> for his conditions). Additionally, James is only 23 at this time, in the prime

		of his fighting youth; Surrey would have been 53 – not necessarily a fair fight! The possibility of a single-combat between James and Surrey was mentioned by Gainsford. once = "for this one time only".5
		152-3: <i>venture His person</i> = "risk his own life".
	His person to an <u>earl</u> , with condition	153: <i>earl</i> = a disyllable here: EAR-al. ¹¹
154	Of spilling lesser blood: Surrey is bold,	153-4: <i>with conditionblood</i> = by resolving the war via
	And James resolved.	single combat, they can avoid the death and wounding of so many soldiers.
		<i>bold</i> = brave.
156	WL	157 160. Weekeels not an otherwise posticularly convert to
	Warb. O, rather, gracious sir,	157-160: Warbeck, not an otherwise particularly sympathetic character, at least recognizes the fight should be his.
158	<u>Create me to this glory</u> , since my cause	= "promote me to this honour".
	<u>Doth interest</u> this fair quarrel; valued least,	= "is the cause of" ⁵ or "is involved in". ^{6,9}
160	I am his equal.	
162	K. Ja. I will be the man. –	
	March softly off: "where victory can reap	163: $softly = quietly.^6$
164	A harvest crowned with triumph, toil is cheap."	163-4: another scene ends with rhyming couplet.
166	[Exeunt.]	
100	[Exeum.]	
	END OF ACT III.	
l		· •

SCENE I.

The English Camp near Ayton, on the Borders.

> Enter Earl of Surrey, Bishop of Durham, Soldiers, with drums and colours.

1 Sur. Are all our braving enemies shrunk back, Hid in the fogs of their distempered climate, 2

Not daring to behold our colours wave 4 <u>In spite of this infected air?</u> Can they

Look on the strength of Cundrestine defaced?

6 The glory of Hedon-hall devasted? that

8

Of Edington cast down? the <u>pile</u> of Fulden O'erthrown? and this the strongest of their forts, Old Ayton-castle, yielded and demolished?

Scene I: Ayton is a Scottish town, located about 6 miles north of the border town Berwick-upon-Tweed.

In 1497, the Earl of Surrey arrived at the Borders region with an army, causing James to retreat from his siege at Norham Castle. Surrey retaliated with a raid into Scotland of his own.

Entering Characters: thanks to the timely arrival of Sur**rey's** army to relieve *Durham*, the English have not only forced the Scottish forces back across the border, but they have also raided into Scotland themselves, attacking and destroying property, and without much pushback from James.

colours = flags and pennants.

Thomas Howard, Earl of Surrey (1443-1524), led a long and remarkable life, which was distinguished by loyalty to whomever held the crown at a given moment. He supported and served Edward IV for many years, and fought with Richard at Bosworth. Imprisoned by Henry for being on the losing side in the battle, he spent three years in the Tower. Surrey refused to leave the Tower when given an opportunity to escape and join the Simnel rebellion in 1487. Recognizing that Surrey could be useful, Henry released him in 1489, and Surrey loyally served Henry for the rest of the king's life (it should be noted that Henry kept possession of most of the lands that Surrey had forfeited for fighting against him at Bosworth).

After successfully putting down a rebellion in Yorkshire in about 1490, Surrey was entrusted for many years with the security of the border with Scotland. Astoundingly, Surrey was aged 70 when he organized and led the English army that destroyed the Scottish forces and killed James IV at the Battle of Flodden in 1513. Surrey remained active in court, serving Henry's son Henry VIII for many more years, before finally dying at about the age of 81 in 1524.

- = challenging or defying.²
- 2: Surrey disparages Scottish weather. The play will repeatly reference the unhealthy climate of the north. *distempered* = inclement, unwholesome.¹
- = in defiance of or notwithstanding the corrupted air: 1 another comment on Scotland's atrocious weather.
- 5-9: Surrey, in his taunting, lists a number of Scottish castles his army has captured or destroyed in Berwickshire.
- 6: *Hedon Hall* = mentioned above at Act III.ii.176. devasted = devastated, laid waste: devaste has its own entry, distinct from that for *devastate*, in the OED.
- = small castle.1
- = surrendered.

10	And yet not peep abroad? The Scots are bold, Hardy in battle; but it seems the cause They undertake, considered, appears Unjointed in the frame on't.	 = the extremely common collocation <i>peep abroad</i> literally meant "to steal a look in public", with the sense of the modern, "show one's face"; it was used in various expressions to derisively describe cowardice or fear. Ford's formula here (his own invention) seems to be a more immediate predecessor to today's "not a peep", in which <i>peep</i> is used to refer to speaking up, rather than looking. = "when one thinks about it".¹ 13: lacking cohesion; with <i>frame</i>, perhaps a "construction" metaphor.
14		Lines 5-9 (above): it is fascinating to see how closely Ford adopted the language of Gainsford in describing the list of castles razed by Surrey's army (p. 86; bold-faced words are those used by Ford): "the Earl of Surreyentered Scotland, defaced the Castle of Cundrestins, devasted the Tower Hedonhall, undermined the Tower of Edington, overthrew the pile of Fulden", and "overthrew and demolished""Haiton Castle".
14	B. of Dur. Noble Surrey,	
16	Our royal master's wisdom is at all times	16-17: <i>Ourharbinger</i> = Henry's sound decisions always lead to success.
18	His fortune's harbinger; for when he draws His sword to threaten war, his <u>providence</u>	= foresight or fate. 1
20	Settles on peace, the crowning of an empire.	= leads to or secures.
20	[A trumpet within.]	
22		
24	Sur. Rank all in order: 'tis a herald's sound; Some message from King James: keep a fixed station.	= arrange the army. ²
26	Enter Marchmont and another in Heralds' coats.	Entering Character: <i>Marchmont</i> is the Scottish herald, or messenger. Pickburn explains that heralds wore distinct sleeveless tunics with their masters' coat of arms depicted on the front.
28	<i>March.</i> From Scotland's <u>awful</u> majesty we come Unto the English general.	= awe-inspiring (as in "full of awe").
30		
32	Sur. To me? Say on.	
34	<i>March.</i> Thus, then; the waste and prodigal Effusion of so much guiltless blood	= spilling. = innocent.
36	As in two potent armies of necessity	= powerful. ¹
38	Must glut the earth's dry womb, <u>his</u> sweet compassion Hath <u>studied</u> to prevent; for which to thee,	= ie. King James'. = endeavored.
40	Great Earl of Surrey, in a single fight He offers his own royal person; fairly	
42	Proposing these conditions only, that	42: ie. if James emerges the winner.
44	If victory conclude our master's right, The <u>earl</u> shall deliver for his ransom	= again, <i>earl</i> is pronounced with 2 syllables.
44	The town of <u>Berwick</u> to him, with the <u>fishgarths</u> ;	44: <i>Berwick</i> = Berwick-upon-Tweed, located near the English border with Scotland, was a frequent pawn in the

		many wars between the two nations.
	If Surrey shall prevail, the king will pay	<i>fishgarths</i> = enclosures in the sea for penning in fish. ¹
46	A thousand pounds down <u>present</u> for his freedom,	= ie. in ready, or present, money. 1,5
48	And silence further arms: so speaks King James.	= ie. and end making war on England.
50	<i>Sur.</i> So speaks King James! so like a king 'a speaks. Heralds, the English general returns	49-59: <i>so likehumility</i> = Surrey is honoured that James, a king, should offer to meet Surrey in single combat.
	A <u>sensible</u> devotion from his heart,	= heartfelt. ¹
52	His very soul, to this <u>unfellowed grace</u> :	= inequaled favour.
	For let the king know, gentle heralds, truly,	= noble. ⁶
54	How his descent from his great throne, to honour	= ie. James is deigning to fight one below his station; single combat, like dueling, generally should only take place between persons of similar rank.
	A stranger subject with so high a title	= foreign.
56	As his <u>compeer</u> in arms, hath conquered more	56: <i>compeer</i> = fellow, equal. ¹
		56-57: hath conqueredcould do = Surrey is "won over" by James' chivalrous proposal.
	Than any sword could do; for which - my loyalty	= ie. loyalty to his own king (ie. Henry).
58	Respected – I will serve his virtues ever	= recognized, ¹ ie. excepted.
60	In all humility: but Berwick, say, Is none of mine to part with; "in affairs	
	Of princes subjects cannot <u>traffic</u> rights	= trade in, or buy and sell. ¹
62	Inherent to the crown." My life is mine,	
	That I dare freely <u>hazard</u> ; and – with pardon	63: <i>hazard</i> = risk. 63-64: <i>with pardonvainglory</i> = "excuse me for saying something so boastful".
64	To some unbribed vainglory – if his majesty Shall taste a change of fate, his liberty	64-66: <i>if hisarticles</i> = Surrey delicately raises the possibility James may lose to him, in which case the king would be released unconditionally. Note that single combat need not lead to the death of one of the participants; yielding would be sufficient to end it.
66	Shall meet no articles. If I fall, falling So <u>bravely</u> , I refer me to his pleasure	66-68: <i>If I fallcondition</i> = if James defeats Surrey, the king may dispose of him as he wishes. bravely = illustriously. ⁵
6 0	With the state of	·
68	Without condition; and for this dear favour,	= valuable.
70	Say, if not countermanded, I will cease Hostility, unless provoked.	69-70: unless Henry orders him to continue prosecuting war on Scotland, Surrey will immediately cease further hostilities, pending the outcome of the single-combat.
72	<i>March.</i> This answer	nostinities, pending the outcome of the single-combat.
71	We shall relate unpartially.	
74	B. of Dur. [To Marchmont] With favour,	75-76: Durham asks the herald to wait a moment.
76	Pray have a little patience. –	
78	[Aside to Surrey] Sir, you find By these gay flourishes how wearied travail	77-81: <i>you findpeace</i> = with good psychological insight, Durham suggests that this offer of single combat from James
70	Inclines a willing rest; here's but a prologue,	is actually a sign of how tired he and his army are already of
80	However confidently uttered, meant	war, and may even be a subtle invitation to treat for peace. gay flourishes = showy displays. 1,5 travail = typically meaning both work and travel.

		Inclines = makes one desire. ensuing acts (line 81) = ie. following acts: in addition to its regular meaning of "deeds", acts is used with prologue in line 79 for a nice stage metaphor.
82 84	For some ensuing acts of peace: consider The time of year, unseasonableness of weather, Charge, barrenness of profit; and occasion Presents itself for honourable treaty,	81-85: <i>consideruse of</i> = Durham lists all the reasons the Scottish no doubt would be pleased to wrap up this conflict, which the English should take advantage of; of course, this tally of reasons could just as well apply to the English.
04	riesents itself for nonourable deaty,	 Charge = expense. barrenness of profit = absence of tangible benefit. occasion = an opportunity.
86	Which we may make good use of. I will <u>back</u> , As sent from you, <u>in point of noble gratitude</u> Unto King James, with these his heralds: you	85-87: <i>I willheralds</i> = Durham will return (<i>back</i>) to James with the herald. <i>in point of noble gratitude</i> = under the pretext of showing thankfulness for James' honourable behaviour towards them.
88	Shall shortly hear from me, my lord, for order Of <u>breathing</u> or proceeding; and King Henry,	88-89: <i>for orderproceeding</i> = with instructions to either remain at rest (<i>breathing</i> = resting) or resume hostilities.
90	Doubt not, will thank the service.	85-90: Durham's clever idea to go with the herald is presumably a direct result of Henry instructing him to find a way to meet with James; the Spanish agent Hialas, we remember, had requested that Henry send an envoy to Scotland to help him persuade James to make peace: see Act III.iii.34-42.
92	Sur. [Aside to Durham] To your wisdom, Lord Bishop, I refer it.	= defer.
94	B. of Dur. [Aside to Surrey] Be it so, then.	
96 98	Sur. Heralds, accept this chain and these few crowns.	97: heralds and messengers usually received a payment from the recipients of their errands.
100	March. Our duty, noble general.	nom the recipionis of their circuits.
102	B. of Dur. In part Of retribution for such princely love,	= repayment.
104	My lord the general is pleased to shew The king your master his sincerest zeal,	= ie. Surrey.
106	By further treaty, by no <u>common</u> man: I will myself return with you.	= ordinary, low-ranked.
108	Sur. Y' oblige My faithfullest affections <u>t'ee</u> , Lord Bishop.	= ie. "to ye".
110	March. All happiness attend your lordship!	- ic. to ye .
112	[Exit with Herald.]	
114	Sur. Come, friends	115-9: Surrey is confident that whatever Durham is up to,
116	And fellow-soldiers; we, I doubt, shall meet	it will lead to the end of the war with Scotland. = suspect.
118	No enemies but woods and hills to fight with; Then 'twere as good to feed and sleep at home:	
120	We may be free from danger, <u>not secure</u> .	= "without being overconfident". 1

	[Exeunt.]	
	ACT IV, SCENE II.	
	The Scottish Camp.	Scene II: the Scottish army was camped only a mile away from the English at Ayton.
	Enter Perkin Warbeck and Frion.	
1 2	<i>Warb.</i> Frion, O, Frion, all my hopes of glory Are at a stand! the Scottish king grows dull,	2: at a stand = predecessor to "at a standstill". dull = sluggish in action or interest.
	Frosty, and wayward, since this Spanish agent	3: Frosty = ie. cold in his treatment of Perkin. wayward = intractable, capricious. the Spanish agent = ie. Hialas, whom we met in Act III.iii in Henry's court. Ayala, the real Spanish agent, had arrived in Scotland in 1496; he was actually enroute at the time James raided England.
4	Hath mixed discourses with him; they are <u>private</u> . I am not called to council now: – <u>confusion</u>	= in close conference with each other. = "may ruin fall": a curse.
6	On all his crafty shrugs! I feel the fabric	6: <i>shrugs</i> = ie. of the shoulders, referring to Hialas' craftiness. ⁵ <i>fabric</i> = ediface. ¹
8	Of my designs are tottering.	= plans. = lack of agreement between subject and verb (<i>fabricare</i>) was common in this era's works.
10	Frion. Henry's policies Stir with too many engines.	9-10: Frion is impressed with Henry's ability to implement multiple concurrent strategies to achieve any particular goal. **engine* = means, instruments, 1 or plots. 6
		12-23 (below): as Warbeck delivers this speech, his agitation should significantly and visibly increase.
12 14	Warb. Let his mines, Shaped in the bowels of the earth, blow up Works raised for my defence, yet can they never	12-14: <i>Let hisdefense</i> = literally, "even if Henry plants underground mines which destroy my defensive fortifications", ie. "even if Henry successfully defeats all efforts to
	works raised for my defence, yet can they hever	promote me".
16	Toss into air the freedom of my birth, Or <u>disavow</u> my blood Plantagenet's:	= "blow up", concluding Warbeck's undermining metaphor. = deny. ¹
	<u>I am my father's son still</u> . – But, O, Frion,	ie. "I am the son of a king, hence I am a king too": proverbial. still = always.
18	When I <u>bring into count with</u> my disasters My wife's <u>compartnership</u> , my Kate's, my life's,	= reckon up. ² = copartnership. ¹
20	Then, then my frailty feels an earthquake. Mischief	20: <i>my frailtyearthquake</i> = metaphorically, Warbeck suffers an emotional upheaval; the expression "to feel an earthquake" was a common one. <i>frailty</i> = body.

		Mischief = read as "may mischief", ie. "may calamity".
22	Damn Henry's plots! I will be England's king, Or let my aunt of Burgundy report My fall in the attempt <u>deserved</u> our ancestors!	= worthy of. ⁹
2426	<i>Frion.</i> You grow too wild in passion: if you will Appear a prince indeed, confine your will To moderation.	25-27: once again, Warbeck must be chastised for letting his emotions get the best of him; see Act II.i.112-3.
28		20. 27. Workaalds frontrations start to get the better of him
30	Warb. What a saucy rudeness Prompts this distrust! "If?" "If I will appear?"	29-37: Warbeck's frustrations start to get the better of him.
32	"Appear a prince!" death throttle such deceits Even in their birth of utterance! cursèd <u>cozenage</u> Of trust! Ye make me mad: 'twere best, it seems,	= deceit.
34	That I should <u>turn impostor to myself</u> ,	= not be true to himself, ie. pretend he is not the rightful king of England!
	Be mine own counterfeit, belie the truth	35-36: <i>beliewomb</i> = disavow the fact that his mother was Elizabeth Woodville, wife of Edward IV.
36	Of my dear mother's womb, the sacred bed Of a prince murthered and a living <u>baffled</u> !	36-37: <i>the sacredmurthered</i> = it was theorized that the two young princes were smothered in their beds; this was how Shakespeare described their deaths in <i>Richard III</i> . 37: ie. "of one prince (Edward) murdered and the other, living one (Richard, aka Warbeck), disgraced or treated shamefully (<i>baffled</i>)." ²
38	Frion. Nay, if you have no ears to hear, I have	= ie. "if you will not listen to me".
40	No breath to spend in vain.	
42 44	Warb. Sir, sir, take heed! Gold and the promise of promotion rarely Fail in temptation.	43-44: Warbeck bitterly hints at his surprise that even Frion is turning on him.
46	<i>Frion.</i> Why to me this?	46: "why are you telling me this?"
		48-56 (below): his passion finally spent, Warbeck regains control of himself, and is apologetic to Frion, on whom he still heavily relies.
48	Warb. Nothing. Speak what you will; we are not sunk so low	
50	But your advice may <u>piece</u> again the heart	= ie. piece together.
52	Which many cares have broken: you were wont In all extremities to talk of comfort;	51-52: <i>you werecomfort</i> = "no matter how bad our situation, you have heretofore always been able to find some way to comfort me." **wont* = accustomed.
54	Have ye none left now? I'll not interrupt ye. <u>Good</u> , bear with my <u>distractions</u> ! If King James Deny us dwelling here, <u>next whither must I</u> ?	= elliptically, "good sir". 6 = mental disturbances. = "to where can I go next?"
56	<u>I preethee</u> , be not angry.	= ie. "I implore thee".
58	Frion. Sir, I told ye Of letters come from Ireland; how the Cornish	59-63: <i>how thegladly</i> = supposedly, the Cornish so
60	Stomach their last defeat, and humbly sue	resent (stomach) their defeat at the hands of Henry's army,

that they now are begging for Warbeck to come to Cornwall, That with such forces as you could partake 62 where he can expect the natives will receive him as the true You would in person land in Cornwall, where Thousands will entertain your title gladly. king (entertain...gladly). *with such...partake* (line 61) = either, "with whomever you can get to accompany you", 9 or "with any troops that you can raise".6 64 65: note that Warbeck switches here to addressing Frion **Warb.** Let me embrace thee, hug thee; th'ast revived from the formal *you* to the affectionate *thee*. = ie. James. 66 My comforts; if my cousin-king will fail, Our cause will never. 68 Enter John A-Water, Heron, Astley, and Sketon. 70 Welcome, my tried friends! 72 You keep your brains awake in our defence. -= inform.² Frion, advise with them of these affairs, 74 In which be wondrous secret: I will listen What else concerns us here: be quick and wary. 76 [Exit Warbeck.] 78 **79**ff (below): the advisors, already informed of the letter mentioned by Frion above, voice their unanimous approval of the plan to take Warbeck – and their fortunes – to Cornwall. Ast. Ah, sweet young prince! - Secretary, my fellow-80 counsellors and I have consulted, and jump all in one 80-81: *jump all...directly* = ie. "we are in agreement". opinion directly; an if this Scotch garboils do not = if. = usually emended to *these*. = tumults.³ 82 fadge to our minds, we will pell-mell run amongst = succeed, come off. = "to our satisfaction". = in disorder. 83: *choughs* = a *chough* is a chattering bird of the crow the Cornish choughs presently and in a trice. family, commonly seen on the sea-cliffs of Cornwall, 1,5 hence its application to the Cornish; 12 but also with a pun on chuffs, which means "rustics" or "peasants". 1,6 *in a trice* = without delay, immediately. This phrase, and its predecessor at a trice, go back to the 15th and early 16th centuries.1 84 = ie. "this entire enterprise is comprised of nothing more **Sket.** 'Tis but going to sea and leaping ashore, cut ten than", ie. "it will be as easy as". = burn. 86 or twelve thousand unnecessary throats, fire seven or eight towns, take half a dozen cities, get into the market-88 place, crown him Richard the Fourth, and the business is finished. 90 J. a-Wat. I grant ye, quoth I, so far forth as men may 91: *I grant ye* = ie. "I acknowledge".¹ 92 do, no more than men may do; for it is good to consider quoth I = ie. "say I". 91-92: so far...may do = men can only do what theycan do. when consideration may be to the purpose, otherwise – 94 still you shall pardon me – little said is soon amended. = an old and common expression, meaning that the less one dwells on a bad situation, the sooner it will be forgotten. 96 *Frion.* Then you conclude the Cornish action surest? 96: now that we know how little Frion thinks of these men, his dissembling flattery and deference to them is quite

funny.

98	<i>Heron.</i> We do so, and doubt not but to thrive abundantly. – Ho, my masters, had we known of the <u>commotion</u>	= rebellion, ie. the Cornish uprising.
100	When we set sail out of Ireland, the land had been ours ere this time.	= before.
102		
104	Sket. Pish, pish! 'tis but <u>forbearing being</u> an earl or a duke a month or two longer. I say, and say it again, if	= putting off becoming. 104-5: <i>if the workapace</i> = ie. if this scheme does not pan out quickly.
105	the work go not on apace, let me never see new <u>fashion</u>	= we remember that Sketon is a tailor.
106	more. I <u>warrant</u> ye, I warrant ye; we will have it so, and so it shall be.	= assure, guarantee.
108	Ast. This is but a cold phlegmatic country, not stirring	109-110: <i>This isspirit</i> = yet another complaint about the
110	enough for men of spirit. Give me the heart of England for my money!	Scottish climate. phlegmatic = apathetic, sluggish. ¹
112	Sket. A man may batten there in a week only with	= grow fat. ¹ = ie. eating only.
114		
114	hot loaves and butter, and a lusty cup of muscadine and	114: hot loaves and butter = this was the stereotypical breakfast of tailors. Dyce's comment is worth quoting: "Our ancestors must have found something peculiarly amusing in a tailor's breakfast to justify the comic writers in these eternal references to it" (p. 183). 11 muscadine = a wine.
116	sugar at breakfast, though he make never a meal all the month after.	115-6: <i>though heafter</i> = "even if he fasts for the entire next month."
118		neat monui.
120	<i>J. a-Wat.</i> Surely, when I bore office I found by experience that to be much troublesome was to be much wise and busy: I have observed how <u>filching</u> and	= stealing or pilfering. ¹
122	bragging has been the best service in these last wars; and therefore conclude peremptorily <u>on</u> the design in	= ie. in favour of.
124	England. If <u>things and things</u> may fall out, as who can tell what or how – but the end will shew it.	= common expression, meaning "if one thing or another". ⁵
126	<i>Frion.</i> Resolved like men of judgment! <u>Here</u> to linger	= ie. in Scotland.
128	More time is but to lose it: cheer the prince And haste him on to this; on this depends	
130	Fame in success, or glory in our ends.	
	[Exeunt.]	
	ACT IV, SCENE III.	
	Another part of the Scottish Camp.	
	Enter King James, the Bishop of Durham, and Hialas.	Entering Characters: <i>Durham</i> and <i>Hialas</i> together turn up the pressure on James to abandon his support for Warbeck.
1	Hial. France, Spain, and Germany combine a league	1: <i>Germany</i> = ie. the Holy Roman Empire. 1-2: <i>combineamity</i> = have formed an alliance; see the note at line 8 below.
2	Of amity with England: nothing <u>wants</u> For settling peace through Christendom, but love	= lacks.

4	Between the British monarchs, James and Henry.	
6	B. of Dur. The English merchants, sir, have been received With general procession into Antwerp;	6-7: ie. English trade with the Flemish has been resumed. In the years when Warbeck was still in Flanders, Henry had punished the archduke and Holy Roman Emperor for their refusal to force Margaret to turn Warbeck out by banning all commercial activity with the Flemish; this of course hurt the English as much as the Flemish, and led to rioting in London.
8	The <u>emperor</u> confirms the <u>combination</u> .	= ie. Maximilian, the Holy Roman Emperor. = alliance. Henry has joined the Holy League, which included the pope, Ferdinand and the Holy Roman Emperor, as well as Milan and Venice, to drive France out of Italy, which the allies in fact managed to do in 1496.
10	<i>Hial.</i> The king of Spain <u>resolves</u> a marriage	= is determined on.
12	For Katherine his daughter with Prince Arthur.	11: Katherine of Aragon finally arrived in England and married Arthur in 1501. The union was one of historic significance: the couple's great-grandson, James VI of Scotland, ascended the English throne in 1603, uniting the two countries.
14	B. of Dur. France courts this early contract.	The committee.
	Hial. What can hinder	
16	A quietness in England? –	= tranquility, ¹ ie. peace.
18	B. of Dur. But your suffrage To such a silly creature, mighty sir,	18-21: Durham finishes Hialas' question. 18-19: But yourcreature = "except for your support (suffrage) ¹ of this foolish and insignificant thing". creature = reprehensible individual, or dependent. ¹
20	As is but in effect an apparition, A shadow, a <u>mere</u> trifle?	20-21: briefly, "who is virtually without substance, an utterly (<i>mere</i>) worthless person?"
22 24	Hial. To this union The good of both the church and commonwealth	25: note how Ford carelessly lets the Spanish envoy Hialas
26	Invite 'ee.	slip into local dialect with 'ee.
28	B. of Dur . To this unity, a mystery Of providence points out a greater blessing For both these nations than our human reason	
30	Can search into. King Henry hath a daughter, The <u>Princess Margaret</u> ; I need not urge	30-37: <i>King Henrykingdoms</i> = Durham dangles Henry's daughter Margaret as a possible wife to further tempt James to reject Warbeck **Princess Margaret* = born in 1489, Margaret was Henry's second child. She was six years old when James attacked England.
32	What honour, what felicity can follow On such affinity 'twixt two Christian kings	S
34	Inleagued by ties of blood; but sure I am,	= united.
36	If you, sir, ratify the peace proposed, I dare both motion and effect this marriage	= "I would dare to propose". = bring about.
38	For <u>weal</u> of both the kingdoms.	= the welfare. James would eventually marry Margaret in 1503,
	K. Ja. Dar'st thou, lord bishop?	when she was 14.

40		
42	B. of Dur. Put it to trial, royal James, by sending Some noble personage to the English court By way of embassy.	= to the test.
44	<i>Hial.</i> Part of the business	
46	Shall suit my mediation.	
48	<i>K. Ja.</i> Well; what Heaven Hath pointed out to be, must be: you two	48-66: James gives a speech that would serve as an excellent model for one looking to apologize for an action that was
50	Are ministers, I hope, of blessèd fate. But herein only I will stand acquitted,	regrettable yet necessary.
52	No blood of innocents shall buy my peace: For Warbeck, as you <u>nick</u> him, came to me,	= call. ¹
54	Commended by the states of Christendom,	= assured to be worthy of approval. ¹ = nations.
56	A prince, though in distress; his fair demeanour, Lovely behaviour, <u>unappallèd</u> spirit,	= courageous. 1
	Spoke him not base in blood, however <u>clouded</u> .	= veiled or cloaked (by circumstances). ¹
58	The brute beasts have both rocks and caves to <u>fly to</u> ,	= ie. "animals". = flee to (for safe haven).
60	And men the altars of the church; to us He came for refuge: "kings come near in nature	= reference to the right of criminals to find sanctuary in certain churches.
62	Unto the gods in being touched with pity." Yet, noble friends, his mixture with our blood,	= by marrying Katherine, who was, like James, descended
<i>c</i> 1	Even with our own, shall no way interrupt	from James I, Warbeck is <i>mixing</i> with royal blood.
64	A general peace; only I will dismiss him From my protection, throughout my dominions,	
66	In safety; but not ever to return.	
	TT 1 X7	
68	<i>Hial.</i> You are a just king.	
68 70	Hial. You are a just king.B. of Dur. Wise, and herein happy.	
	B. of Dur. Wise, and herein happy.K. Ja. Nor will we dally in affairs of weight:	= delay. ¹
70 72	B. of Dur. Wise, and herein happy.K. Ja. Nor will we dally in affairs of weight: Huntley, lord bishop, shall with you to England	= delay. ¹ = ie. go with.
70	 B. of Dur. Wise, and herein happy. K. Ja. Nor will we dally in affairs of weight: Huntley, lord bishop, shall with you to England Ambassador from us: we will throw down 	= ie. go with.
70 72	B. of Dur. Wise, and herein happy.K. Ja. Nor will we dally in affairs of weight: Huntley, lord bishop, shall with you to England	'
70 72 74	B. of Dur. Wise, and herein happy. K. Ja. Nor will we dally in affairs of weight: Huntley, lord bishop, shall with you to England Ambassador from us: we will throw down Our weapons; peace on all sides! Now repair	= ie. go with.
70 72 74 76	B. of Dur. Wise, and herein happy. K. Ja. Nor will we dally in affairs of weight: Huntley, lord bishop, shall with you to England Ambassador from us: we will throw down Our weapons; peace on all sides! Now repair Unto our council; we will soon be with you.	= ie. go with. = "I must go". = "delay will not put a prompt settlement into jeopardy"
70 72 74 76 78	B. of Dur. Wise, and herein happy. K. Ja. Nor will we dally in affairs of weight: Huntley, lord bishop, shall with you to England Ambassador from us: we will throw down Our weapons; peace on all sides! Now repair Unto our council; we will soon be with you. Hial. Delay shall question no dispatch; Heaven crown it.	= ie. go with. = "I must go". = "delay will not put a prompt settlement into jeopardy"
70 72 74 76 78	B. of Dur. Wise, and herein happy. K. Ja. Nor will we dally in affairs of weight: Huntley, lord bishop, shall with you to England Ambassador from us: we will throw down Our weapons; peace on all sides! Now repair Unto our council; we will soon be with you. Hial. Delay shall question no dispatch; Heaven crown it. [Exeunt Bishop of Durham and Hialas.]	= ie. go with. = "I must go". = "delay will not put a prompt settlement into jeopardy" (Gibson, p. 301).6
70 72 74 76 78 80 82	B. of Dur. Wise, and herein happy. K. Ja. Nor will we dally in affairs of weight: Huntley, lord bishop, shall with you to England Ambassador from us: we will throw down Our weapons; peace on all sides! Now repair Unto our council; we will soon be with you. Hial. Delay shall question no dispatch; Heaven crown it. [Exeunt Bishop of Durham and Hialas.] K. Ja. A league with Ferdinand! a marriage With English Margaret! a free release From restitution for the late affronts!	= ie. go with. = "I must go". = "delay will not put a prompt settlement into jeopardy" (Gibson, p. 301).6 = "an alliance with Spain!" 83-84: a free releaseaffronts = "and I won't have to pay restitution for the damage I have caused by my raid of England!" Henry will later chide Surrey for granting James this concession.
70 72 74 76 78 80 82	 B. of Dur. Wise, and herein happy. K. Ja. Nor will we dally in affairs of weight: Huntley, lord bishop, shall with you to England Ambassador from us: we will throw down Our weapons; peace on all sides! Now repair Unto our council; we will soon be with you. Hial. Delay shall question no dispatch; Heaven crown it. [Exeunt Bishop of Durham and Hialas.] K. Ja. A league with Ferdinand! a marriage With English Margaret! a free release From restitution for the late affronts! Cessation from hostility! and all For Warbeck, not delivered, but dismissed! 	= ie. go with. = "I must go". = "delay will not put a prompt settlement into jeopardy" (Gibson, p. 301).6 = "an alliance with Spain!" 83-84: a free releaseaffronts = "and I won't have to pay restitution for the damage I have caused by my raid of England!" Henry will later chide Surrey for granting James
70 72 74 76 78 80 82 84	 B. of Dur. Wise, and herein happy. K. Ja. Nor will we dally in affairs of weight: Huntley, lord bishop, shall with you to England Ambassador from us: we will throw down Our weapons; peace on all sides! Now repair Unto our council; we will soon be with you. Hial. Delay shall question no dispatch; Heaven crown it. [Exeunt Bishop of Durham and Hialas.] K. Ja. A league with Ferdinand! a marriage With English Margaret! a free release From restitution for the late affronts! Cessation from hostility! and all For Warbeck, not delivered, but dismissed! We could not wish it better. – Dalyell! 	= ie. go with. = "I must go". = "delay will not put a prompt settlement into jeopardy" (Gibson, p. 301).6 = "an alliance with Spain!" 83-84: a free releaseaffronts = "and I won't have to pay restitution for the damage I have caused by my raid of England!" Henry will later chide Surrey for granting James this concession. 85-86: and alldismissed = and to get all this, James does not even have to turn Warbeck over to Henry — he need only
70 72 74 76 78 80 82 84	 B. of Dur. Wise, and herein happy. K. Ja. Nor will we dally in affairs of weight: Huntley, lord bishop, shall with you to England Ambassador from us: we will throw down Our weapons; peace on all sides! Now repair Unto our council; we will soon be with you. Hial. Delay shall question no dispatch; Heaven crown it. [Exeunt Bishop of Durham and Hialas.] K. Ja. A league with Ferdinand! a marriage With English Margaret! a free release From restitution for the late affronts! Cessation from hostility! and all For Warbeck, not delivered, but dismissed! 	= ie. go with. = "I must go". = "delay will not put a prompt settlement into jeopardy" (Gibson, p. 301).6 = "an alliance with Spain!" 83-84: a free releaseaffronts = "and I won't have to pay restitution for the damage I have caused by my raid of England!" Henry will later chide Surrey for granting James this concession. 85-86: and alldismissed = and to get all this, James does not even have to turn Warbeck over to Henry — he need only

92		
	<i>K. Ja.</i> Are Huntley and his daughter sent for?	
94 96	Daly. Sent for And come, my lord.	
98	K. Ja. Say to the English prince,	= ie. Warbeck.
100	We want his company.	
102	Daly. He is at hand, sir.	
104	Enter Perkin Warbeck, Lady Katherine, Jane, Frion, Heron, Sketon, John A-Water, and Astley.	
106	K. Ja. Cousin, our bounty, favours, gentleness,	106-127: James gives another model speech of apology, this time to Warbeck. bounty = generosity.
	Our benefits, the <u>hazard of our person</u> ,	= "risk to myself".
108	Our people's lives, our land, hath evidenced	
110	How much we have engaged on your behalf: How trivial and how dangerous our hopes	
110	Appear, how fruitless our attempts in war;	
112	How windy, rather smoky, your assurance	112-3: "how illusory were your guarantees that the English
	Of <u>party</u> shews, we might in vain repeat:	would rise in your support". Warbeck's assurances were not just all talk (<i>windy</i>), but also misled James by clouding his
		judgment (<i>smoky</i>). <i>party</i> = side, faction, ² or support. ⁵
114	But now obedience to the mother church,	114: allusion to Pope Alexander's efforts to recruit the states of Europe to join the Holy League, suggests Gibson.
	A father's care upon his country's <u>weal</u> ,	= welfare.
116	The dignity of state, direct our wisdom To seal an oath of peace through Christendom;	
118	To which we are sworn already: [i]t is you	= pronounce as we're.
	Must only seek new fortunes in the world,	= alone. ⁶
120	And find an harbour elsewhere. As I promised	
122	On your arrival, you have met no <u>usage</u>	= treatment.
122	Deserves repentance in your being here; But yet I must live master of mine own:	123: a monarch must ultimately be free to act as is necessary to serve himself and his country; no external obligations can be permitted to supersede this mandate.
124	However, what is necessary for you	
126	At your departure, I am well content	
126	You be accommodated with, provided Delay prove not my enemy.	
128	Doing prove not my enomy.	
120	Warb. It shall not,	129-144: to his credit, Warbeck is graceful in his response.
130	Most glorious prince. The <u>fame</u> of my <u>designs</u> Soars higher than report of ease and <u>sloath</u>	= repute. = plans, goals. = ie. sloth.
132	Can aim at: I acknowledge all your favours	- ic. sioni.
	Boundless and singular; am only wretched	
134	In words as well as means to thank the grace	
136	That flowed so liberally. Two empires firmly	
130	You're lord of, – Scotland and Duke Richard's heart: My claim to mine inheritance shall sooner	
138	Fail than my life to serve you, best of kings;	

140	And, witness Edward's blood in me! I am More loth to part with such a great example Of virtue than all other mere respects.	140-1: <i>a greatvirtue</i> = meaning James. 141: ie. James' <i>virtue</i> is what has impressed Warbeck the most.
142	But, sir, my last suit is, you will not force From me what you have given, – this chaste lady,	<i>mere respects</i> = individual consideration. ¹
144	Resolved on all extremes.	144: "(who is) determined to stick with me through thick and thin."
146 148	Kath. I am your wife; No human power can or shall divorce My faith from duty.	
150	Warb. Such another treasure	
152	The earth is bankrout of.	
	K. Ja. I gave her, cousin,	cc. 1
154	And must <u>avow</u> the gift; will add <u>withal</u> <u>A furniture</u> becoming her high birth	= affirm. = moreover. ¹ = belongings, dress, etc.
156	And <u>unsuspected constancy</u> ; provide For your attendance: we will part good friends.	= "undoubted faithfulness (to you)." = "servants to attend you." ⁶
158	[Exit James with Lord Dalyell.]	159: thus ends James' part in our play; the real James never
1.00	[Esti vanies with Bora Baryens]	admitted he had been deceived, but rather, to the end of his life, always referred to Warbeck as the Duke of York.
160	<i>Warb.</i> The Tudor hath been cunning in his plots:	= ie. Henry, again not referring to him as "king"; Henry was the first in the Tudor line, succeeding the last of the Plan- tagenets, Richard III.
162	His <u>Fox</u> of Durham would not fail at last. But what? our cause and courage are our own:	= easy pun on the bishop's name, Richard Fox: foxes were proverbially crafty.
164	Be men, my friends, and let our cousin-king See how we follow fate as willingly	
166	As <u>malice</u> follows us. <u>Y'are</u> all resolved For the west parts of England?	= evil; the sense is "bad luck". = ie. "ye are".
168	All. Cornwall, Cornwall!	
170		
172	Frion. The inhabitants expect you daily.	
174	Warb. Cheerfully Draw all our ships out of the harbour, friends;	
176	Our time of stay doth seem too long, we must Prevent intelligence; about it suddenly.	175-6: <i>Our timesuddenly</i> = "we've been in Scotland too long: let's move quickly, to outrun news of our actions reaching Henry!" <i>Prevent</i> = anticipate.
178	All. A prince, a prince!	178: typical cheer of support; in Shakespeare's <i>Henry VI</i> , <i>Part 1</i> , the soldiers about to fight under the great Lord Talbot enter battle shouting "a <i>Talbot!</i> a <i>Talbot!</i> "
180	[Exeunt Heron, Sketon, Astley, and John A-Water.]	
182	<i>Warb.</i> Dearest, admit not into thy pure thoughts The least of scruples, which may charge their softness	182-4: <i>admitdistrust</i> = Warbeck implores Katherine not to doubt him, which might lead to distrust. <i>charge their softness</i> = weigh down the tenderness of her thoughts.

184	With burden of distrust. Should I prove wanting	= lacking. = "here is the test".
186	To noblest courage now, here were the trial: But I am perfect, sweet; I fear no change,	= satisfied, assured, 9 or "not without courage".6
188	More than thy being partner in my sufferance.	= other. ⁶ = suffering.
190	Kath. My fortunes, sir, have armed me to encounter What chance soe'er they meet with. – Jane, 'tis fit	
192	Thou stay behind, for whither wilt thou wander?	191: note the nice alliteration in the second half of this line.
194	Jane. Never till death will I forsake my mistress, Nor then in wishing to die with 'ee gladly.	193-4: until she dies, Jane will remain loyal to Katherine, preferring to die alongside her than live without her.
196	Kath. Alas, good soul!	
198	Frion. Sir, to your aunt of Burgundy	
200	I will relate your present undertakings: From her expect on all occasions welcome.	
202	You cannot find me idle in your services.	198-201: we may wonder if Frion is abandoning the ship, under the pretext of going to the continent for help.
204	<i>Warb.</i> Go, Frion, go: wise men know how to soothe Adversity, not serve it: thou hast waited	204-5: <i>thou hastexpectation</i> = Frion has honourably stuck with Warbeck, without reward as yet.
206	Too long on expectation; "never yet Was any nation read of so besotted In reason as to adore the setting sun."	205-7: <i>neversun</i> = a melancholy sentiment; perhaps recognizing the decline of his fortunes, Warbeck knows that nobody wants to back a loser. <i>to adore</i> = pronounce as <i>t' adore</i> .
208	Fly to the archduke's court; say to the duchess, Her nephew, with fair Katherine his wife,	= ie. to Flanders. = ie. Margaret of Burgundy. = meaning himself, as Richard, Duke of York.
210	Are on their expectation to begin	211-2: <i>if they failnever</i> = even if Warbeck's goal does
212	The raising of an empire: if they fail, Yet the report will never. Farewell, Frion!	not come to fruition, the renown of the attempt will live on forever.
214	[Exit Frion.]	
216	This man, Kate, has been <u>true</u> , though now of late I fear too much familiar with the Fox.	217-8: Warbeck is anxious about Frion's frequent conferring with the English bishop.
218		true = loyal (to Warbeck).
220	Re-enter Lord Dalyell with the Earl of Huntley.	
222	Hunt. I come to take my leave: you need not doubt My interest in this sometime child of mine;	= former.
	She's all yours now, good sir. – [to Katherine] O, poor lost creature,	
224	Heaven guard thee with much patience! if thou canst Forget thy title to old Huntley's family,	
226	As much of peace will settle in thy mind As thou canst wish to taste but in thy grave.	
228	Accept my tears yet, preethee; they are tokens Of charity as true as of affection.	= symbols.
230	Kath. This is the cruëll'st farewell!	
232		– an imperative
	Hunt. [To Warbeck] Love, young gentleman,	= an imperative.

234	This model of my griefs; she calls you husband;	= this abstract or representation, lie. symbol, of his griefs,
	Then be not jealous of a parting kiss,	alluding to Katherine.
236	It is a father's, not a lover's offering; — Take it, my last [Kisses her]. — I am too much a child.	= Huntley begins to shed tears.
238	Exchange of passion is to little use,	238: "getting emotional here does neither of us any good".
240	So I should grow too foolish: goodness guide thee!	= thus ⁶ or but. ⁹
242	[Exit Huntley.]	
	<i>Kath.</i> Most miserable daughter! – [<i>To Dalyell</i>] Have you aught	
244	To add, sir, to our sorrows?	
246	Daly. I resolve,	246-9: Dalyell will accompany Warbeck and Katherine
248	Fair lady, with your leave, to wait on all Your fortunes in my person, if your lord	wherever they choose to go. = ie. Warbeck.
250	Vouchsafe me entertainment.	249: "will deign to welcome me in this capacity."
	<i>Warb.</i> We will be bosom-friends, most noble Dalyell;	- FC
252	For I accept this <u>tender</u> of your love Beyond ability of thanks to speak it. –	= offer.
254	<u>Clear thy drowned eyes</u> , my fairest: time and <u>industry</u> Will shew us better days, or end the worst.	= lovely image for "stop crying". = hard work.
256	[Exeunt.]	
	[Елеині.]	
	ACT IV CCENE IV	
	ACT IV, SCENE IV.	
	The Palace of Westminster.	
1	The Palace of Westminster. Enter Earl of Oxford and Lord Dawbney.	1: After having been evicted from Scotland, Warbeck sailed
1 2	The Palace of Westminster. Enter Earl of Oxford and Lord Dawbney. Oxf. No news from Scotland yet, my lord?	1: After having been evicted from Scotland, Warbeck sailed with Katherine and one or two children to Cork, Ireland, landing on 26 July 1597. The citizens of Waterford wrote to Henry of Warbeck's intention to land in Cornwall, which he did on 7 September (his ships had been chased and caught by citizens of Waterford; they demanded Warbeck be turned over to them, but the captain swore he had no knowledge of the man, all the time which Warbeck was hiding in a barrel). Once in Cornwall, Warbeck quickly found himself surrounded by a supporting rabble of several thousand.
	The Palace of Westminster. Enter Earl of Oxford and Lord Dawbney. Oxf. No news from Scotland yet, my lord? Dawb. Not any	with Katherine and one or two children to Cork, Ireland, landing on 26 July 1597. The citizens of Waterford wrote to Henry of Warbeck's intention to land in Cornwall, which he did on 7 September (his ships had been chased and caught by citizens of Waterford; they demanded Warbeck be turned over to them, but the captain swore he had no knowledge of the man, all the time which Warbeck was hiding in a barrel). Once in Cornwall, Warbeck quickly found himself
4	The Palace of Westminster. Enter Earl of Oxford and Lord Dawbney. Oxf. No news from Scotland yet, my lord? Dawb. Not any But what King Henry knows himself: I thought Our armies should have marched that way; his mind,	with Katherine and one or two children to Cork, Ireland, landing on 26 July 1597. The citizens of Waterford wrote to Henry of Warbeck's intention to land in Cornwall, which he did on 7 September (his ships had been chased and caught by citizens of Waterford; they demanded Warbeck be turned over to them, but the captain swore he had no knowledge of the man, all the time which Warbeck was hiding in a barrel). Once in Cornwall, Warbeck quickly found himself surrounded by a supporting rabble of several thousand. 5-6: Henry changed his original plan of sending an addition-
	The Palace of Westminster. Enter Earl of Oxford and Lord Dawbney. Oxf. No news from Scotland yet, my lord? Dawb. Not any But what King Henry knows himself: I thought	with Katherine and one or two children to Cork, Ireland, landing on 26 July 1597. The citizens of Waterford wrote to Henry of Warbeck's intention to land in Cornwall, which he did on 7 September (his ships had been chased and caught by citizens of Waterford; they demanded Warbeck be turned over to them, but the captain swore he had no knowledge of the man, all the time which Warbeck was hiding in a barrel). Once in Cornwall, Warbeck quickly found himself surrounded by a supporting rabble of several thousand. 5-6: Henry changed his original plan of sending an additional army north to meet the Scottish. Except for Urswick, none of Henry's advisors know of his secret plotting with Hialas to
4	Enter Earl of Oxford and Lord Dawbney. Oxf. No news from Scotland yet, my lord? Dawb. Not any But what King Henry knows himself: I thought Our armies should have marched that way; his mind, It seems, is altered. Oxf. Victory attends	with Katherine and one or two children to Cork, Ireland, landing on 26 July 1597. The citizens of Waterford wrote to Henry of Warbeck's intention to land in Cornwall, which he did on 7 September (his ships had been chased and caught by citizens of Waterford; they demanded Warbeck be turned over to them, but the captain swore he had no knowledge of the man, all the time which Warbeck was hiding in a barrel). Once in Cornwall, Warbeck quickly found himself surrounded by a supporting rabble of several thousand. 5-6: Henry changed his original plan of sending an additional army north to meet the Scottish. Except for Urswick, none
4	Enter Earl of Oxford and Lord Dawbney. Oxf. No news from Scotland yet, my lord? Dawb. Not any But what King Henry knows himself: I thought Our armies should have marched that way; his mind, It seems, is altered.	with Katherine and one or two children to Cork, Ireland, landing on 26 July 1597. The citizens of Waterford wrote to Henry of Warbeck's intention to land in Cornwall, which he did on 7 September (his ships had been chased and caught by citizens of Waterford; they demanded Warbeck be turned over to them, but the captain swore he had no knowledge of the man, all the time which Warbeck was hiding in a barrel). Once in Cornwall, Warbeck quickly found himself surrounded by a supporting rabble of several thousand. 5-6: Henry changed his original plan of sending an additional army north to meet the Scottish. Except for Urswick, none of Henry's advisors know of his secret plotting with Hialas to
4 6	Enter Earl of Oxford and Lord Dawbney. Oxf. No news from Scotland yet, my lord? Dawb. Not any But what King Henry knows himself: I thought Our armies should have marched that way; his mind, It seems, is altered. Oxf. Victory attends	with Katherine and one or two children to Cork, Ireland, landing on 26 July 1597. The citizens of Waterford wrote to Henry of Warbeck's intention to land in Cornwall, which he did on 7 September (his ships had been chased and caught by citizens of Waterford; they demanded Warbeck be turned over to them, but the captain swore he had no knowledge of the man, all the time which Warbeck was hiding in a barrel). Once in Cornwall, Warbeck quickly found himself surrounded by a supporting rabble of several thousand. 5-6: Henry changed his original plan of sending an additional army north to meet the Scottish. Except for Urswick, none of Henry's advisors know of his secret plotting with Hialas to

	Directs and tutors strength; else elephants	= allusion to the use of <i>elephants</i> in ancient armies to terrify opponents.
14	And <u>barbèd horses</u> might as well prevail As the most subtle stratagems of war.	= horses wearing armour on their breasts and flanks. ¹
16	Oxf. The Scottish king shewed more than comm bravery	non
18	In <u>proffer</u> of a combat hand-to-hand With Surrey.	= "his offer".
20	•	
22	Dawb. And but shewed it: northern bloods Are gallant being fired; but the cold climate,	= ie. spirit, courage. = when inflamed.
	Without good store of fuël, quickly freezeth	23: <i>store</i> = supply.
24	The glowing flames.	23-24: <i>freezethflames</i> = ie. suppresses the spirit.
26	Oxf. Surrey, upon my life,	= ie. "I bet my life".
20	Would not have shrunk an hair's-breadth.	27: ie. would have gladly fought James without an iota of fear or hesitation.
28	Dawb. May 'a for	feit 29-32: 'a is meant generally: "any Englishman who would
30	The honour of an English name and nature, Who would not have embraced it with a greeding	not gladly take up the chance to battle King James would
32	As violent as hunger runs to food! 'Twas an addition any worthy spirit	= a mark of honour or distinction. ²
34	Would covet, next to immortality,	
36	Above all joys of life: we all missed shares In that great opportunity.	
38	Enter King Henry and Urswick, wh	spering.
40	Oxf. The king!	
42	See, 'a comes smiling.	
12	<i>Dawb.</i> O, the game runs smooth	
44	On his side, then, believe it: cards well shuffled	
46	And dealt with cunning bring some gamester thr But others must <u>rise</u> losers.	eift, = gambler. = success or good luck. ¹ = ie. from the gaming table.
48	K. Hen. The train takes?	48: "the scheme, snare or trick ^{1,9} is working?"
50	<i>Urs.</i> Most prosperously.	
52	K. Hen. I knew it should not me. He fondly angles who will hurl his bait	ss. 53-55: a fishing metaphor: "any man is foolish who gives up
54	Into the water 'cause the fish at first Plays round about the line and dares not bite. –	any enterprise after but a single failure". fondly = foolishly. angles = ie. fishes.
56	Lords, we may reign your king yet: Dawbney, C	xford, 56ff: Henry is in a good mood, and playful with his friends.
58	Urswick, must Perkin wear the crown?	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
	Dawb. A slave!	
60	Oxf. A vagabond!	
62	, c	
64	Urs. A glow-worm!	= 17th century term of opprobrium. ¹

	K. Hen.	Now, if Frion,	65-70: Henry expects Warbeck, on the advice of Frion, will invade England.
66	His practised politician, wear a brain Of proof, King Perkin will in progress ride		66-67: <i>wear aproof</i> = literally, has an impenetrable skull, ie. is thick-skulled, or stupid. ¹⁶ Pickburn, however, suggests, "has a brain which has been tested and found trustworthy" (p. 138). ⁵
68	Through all his large dominions;	let us meet him,	= ie. throughout England, which Warbeck would rule as "king" (ironic).
70	And tender homage: ha, sirs! lieg To pay their fealty.	<u>emen</u> ought	69-70: Henry humorously suggests they accept Warbeck as their overlord! tender = offer. fealty and homage = fealty was a vow not to do harm to one's lord; homage was a ceremony in which a vassal, or subject, acknowledged that his position was held at the sufferance of his lord. Throughout the pre-unification history of England and Scotland, English monarchs continuously attempted to force their Scottish counterparts to accept the English kings as their overlords. liegeman = a vassal who swore to provide support, especially military service, in return for protection from a superior lord. 1
72 74	Dawb. Would the ra With all his rabble, within twenty Of London!		= if only.
76	K. Hen. Farther off is near en	ough	76-77: <i>Farther offhis home</i> = "there is no need to trap Warbeck in his hiding place any closer than he is." ⁵
78	To lodge him in his home: I'll wa Surrey and all his men are either		77-80: <i>I'll wagerbusy</i> = Henry playfully drops a hint that Surrey's army, which had hurried to meet James' army, is doing no fighting, because he expects or knows that James has made peace with the English.
80	Or <u>hasting back</u> ; they have not we To keep them busy.	ork, I <u>doubt</u> ,	= ie. returning quickly to London. = suspect.
82	Dawb. "Tis a strange	conceit, sir.	= idea or notion; the nobles, still in the dark about Henry's schemes, are confused.
84	K. Hen. Such voluntary favours		84-89: <i>Such voluntarytreasury</i> = Henry explains how he never wastes the state's treasury on flatterers or an extravagant lifestyle. *favours* = ie. money, payments.6
86	In duty aid us with, we never scar On <u>cobweb parasites</u> , or lavished		86: <i>cobweb</i> = used figuratively to describe anything frail or insubstantial. ¹ <i>parasites</i> = those who through flattery gain the patronage of a rich or powerful person, ¹ ie. Henry.
88	In <u>riot</u> or a needless hospitality: No undeserving favourite doth bo	past	= extravagant or dissolute lifestyle. ¹
90	His <u>issues</u> from our treasury; our Flows through all Europe, provin Of every contribution which prov	g us but steward	89: <i>issues</i> = outflows, as of liquid, ¹ referring to the wasteful or purposeless spending of state funds; used in metaphor with <i>flows</i> (line 90).

92	Against the <u>creeping canker of disturbance</u> .	89-92: <i>our chargedisturbance</i> = though thrifty, Henry is prudent enough to spend money when necessary to secure his throne, even distributing funds throughout the continent in order to purchase support and keep abreast of potentially harmful developments. Hall mentions that Henry had spies all over Europe. <i>charge</i> = expenses, ie. money. <i>creeping canker of disturbance</i> = insidious malignancy of rebellion. 1
94	Is it not <u>rare</u> , then, in this toil of state Wherein <u>we</u> are embarked, with breach of sleep,	93: <i>rare</i> = striking. 93-95: <i>in this toiltrouble</i> = "in this time of struggle and war (<i>toil</i>), in which I (<i>we</i>) am engaged, with its accompanying lack of sleep, anxiety (<i>cares</i>), and noise of disturbance".
	Cares, and the noise of trouble, that our mercy	95-96: <i>that ourcomfort</i> = "that I am rewarded with neither gratitude nor peace, despite the leniency I have shown my enemies?"
96	Returns nor thanks nor comfort? Still the West	= ie. Cornwall.
98	Murmur and threaten <u>innovation</u> , Whisper our government tyrannical,	= insurrection. ²
100	<u>Deny us what is ours</u> , nay, <u>spurn</u> their lives, Of which they are but owners by our gift:	= ie. refuse to pay their taxes. = kick at, ie. throw away.
102	It must not be.	
104	Oxf. It must not, should not.	
106	Enter Messenger with a packet.	
108	K. Hen. So then – To whom?	
110	<i>Mess.</i> This packet to your sacred majesty.	
112	K. Hen. Sirrah, attend without.	112: <i>Sirrah</i> = common form of address used towards servants and the like. attend without = "wait outside".
114	[Exit Messenger.] [Henry reads letter.]	115: stage direction added by editor.
116	Oxf. News from the North, upon my life.	
118		
120	Dawb. Wise Henry Divines aforehand of events; with him Attempts and executions are one act.	120-1: <i>with himact</i> = anything Henry attempts is as good as done.
122	K. Hen. Urswick, thine ear: Frion is caught; the man	
124	Of cunning is <u>outreached</u> ; <u>we</u> must be safe.	= outwitted. = I (the "royal we").
126	Should reverend <u>Morton</u> , our archbishop, move To a translation higher yet, I tell thee My Durham owns a brain deserves that <u>see</u> ;	125-7: the Bishop of Durham deserves to be Archbishop, of Canterbury, should the present prelate Morton die. 125: <i>Morton</i> = <i>John Morton</i> (1420-1500), Henry's elderly Archbishop of Canterbury. 125-6: <i>move tohigher yet</i> = be transferred to Heaven, ie. die; Henry toys with the word <i>translation</i> , which was used to describe the re-assignment of a bishop from one

			location to another. ¹ see = the particular location at which a bishop holds his position. In fact, when Morton died in 1500, he was replaced by one Thomas Langton, who died 5 days later of the plague; Foxe was given the wealthy see of Winchester in 1503.
128	He's nimble in his indust Thou hear'st me?	ry, and mounting –	128: Durham is clever and quick in his work, and has aspirations to higher office.129: Henry seems to be implying something to Urswick.
130		nceive your highness fitly.	131: Urswick understands, but if there is a secret instruction being given to Urswick to help Durham along in his rise to
132			higher office, the idea is never pursued or explained. 133-140 (below): Henry, still keeping secrets, remains humorously and ironically playful. He has now learned of Warbeck's landing at Cornwall, and the army he has raised – but out of a quirky sense of humour, won't tell the others what is going on.
134	Entire, it were a weakness		= fully intact. ¹ = would be. = allow, permit.
136	The rust of laziness to ea Set forward toward <u>Salis</u> Are most commodious fo	bury; the plains	136-7: "take the army to <i>Salisbury Plain</i> (the famous 280 square mile great plain located about 90 miles west of London), ¹⁵ where there is plenty of room to engage in military exercises."
138	Ourself will take a musted And or disband them with		138: Henry will personally travel to Salisbury Plain to assemble and count his soldiers. ¹ = ie. and either.
140	Dispose as best concerns		- ic. and citier.
142	Dawb. Sir, all is peace at Salisb	Salisbury! ury.	142-3: Dawbney is naturally confused.
144 146	K. Hen. The <u>charge</u> must be our of Pertake the pleasure with		= responsibility or burden. 1
148	Shall I entreat your loves		
150	Oxf.	Command our lives.	
152	My bishop is a jewël trie		= act. = anticipate. ¹ = ie. Durham. = tested.
154	A jewël, lords. The <u>post</u> Must speed another to th	who brought these letters e Mayor of <u>Exeter;</u>	= messenger. = a city in south-west England, east of Cornwall; see Act V. i.62-65.
156	Urswick, dismiss him no	<u>t</u> .	= ie. "keep the messenger hanging around as yet."
158	Urs.	He waits your pleasure.	
160	K. Hen. Perkin a king?	a king!	
162	Urs.	My gracious lord, -	
164	K. Hen. Thoughts busie	d in the sphere of royalty	164-5: <i>thoughtearth</i> = a king does not waste time worry-

	Fix not on creeping	ng worms without their stings,	ing about those who, like non-venomous snakes (<i>worms</i>), are actually harmless.
166 168	Is thriving safety,	of earth. The use of time and a wise <u>prevention</u> W'are resolved for Salisbury. [Exeunt.]	166: <i>excrements</i> = ie. dregs ¹ 166-8: <i>The useexpected</i> = time must be occupied wisely to forestall genuine injury that is brewing against the throne. *prevention* = anticipation.
	ACT IV, SCE	ENE V.	
	The Coast of Cor	nwall.	
		[A general shout within.]	= ie. off-stage.
		Enter Perkin Warbeck, Lord Dalyell, Lady Katherine, and Jane.	Entering Characters: Warbeck and his small party have landed at Cornwall, where they have been greeted by a cheering crowd. Warbeck's party, comprised of "four small barks (boats), with some six score or seven score fighting men", landed at Whitsand Bay on the southern coast of Cornwall on 7 September 1497 (Bacon, p. 180).
1		nany storms as wind and seas	
2		o our weather-beaten ships, rest, we are safe arrived	
4		er earth, ingrateful only s in yielding sustenance	4-6: Warbeck indignantly describes England (<i>our dear mo-ther</i> earth) as a land which has assisted a usurper – Henry –
6		f our throne and right.	to the throne. ingrateful only = ie. the only nation so distasteful. ¹
8		clamations are an omen to their welcome lord:	7-8: the Cornish have welcomed Warbeck with enthusiasm. process = advance. ⁹ Warbeck, upon landing at Cornwall, quickly found himself leading an unarmed mob of 3000 men, and proclaimed himself Richard the Fourth.
		ops, and from all parts with wings	nimsetj Kichara ine Pourin.
10	2 2 2	their hearts before us. – n of a matchless wife,	= example, model; Warbeck's devotion to his wife, even
12	How fares my dea		though he has been lying about his identify to her, is his most sympathetic characteristic.
14	Kath. By which I may t	Confirmed in health, he better undergo	14-16: <i>Confirmedof change</i> = Katherine feels healthy enough to survive even the most trying of circumstances.
16		e of change; but I shall learn	16-18: <i>but Igentleman</i> = Katherine will learn how to keep
18		since silence courts affliction, his truly noble gentleman, –	hope alive from the example of the patient Lord Dalyell (<i>the noble gentleman</i>), who has accompanied the couple on their journey.
20	_	pattern of a friend! –	= unmatched model or example.
20	And my belovèd. Of all misfortunes	Jane, the willing follower s.	
22	Daly.	Lady, I return	23-25: with a nice agricultural metaphor, Dalyell seems to

24	But barren crops of <u>early protestations</u> , Frost-bitten in the spring of fruitless hopes.	allude to his disappointed expectation of wedding Katherine. 24: Dalyell's premature professions (<i>early protestations</i>) ⁶ of love for Katherine died stillborn. One may wonder if this bitter comment is out of character for the honourable Dalyell.
2628	<i>Jane.</i> I wait but as the shadow to the body; For madam, without you let me be nothing.	27-28: Jane considers herself to have little value compared to Katherine, to whom she is greatly devoted.
30	<i>Warb.</i> None talk of sadness, – we are on the way Which leads to victory: keep cowards thoughts	31-32: <i>keep cowardssullenness</i> = "let cowards be the ones who hang on to thoughts of despairing anxiety" (Gibson, p. 311). ⁶
32	With desperate sullenness! The lion faints not Locked in a grate, but loose disdains all force	32-34: <i>The lionprey</i> = even when confined in a cage (<i>grate</i>), ¹ the lion does not get dispirited; and once set free, it allows nothing to get in the way of its hunt for prey.
34	Which bars his prey, – and we are <u>lion-hearted</u> , Or else no king of beasts.	= brave as a lion; as we shall see, when the chips are down, Warbeck's bravado will desert him.
36 38	[Another general shout within.]	
40	- <u>Hark</u> , how they shout, Triumphant in our cause! bold confidence	= listen.
42	Marches on bravely, cannot quake at danger.	
44	Enter Sketon.	
77	Sket. Save King Richard the Fourth! save thee, king	45: <i>Save</i> = ie. God save. 45-46: <i>king of hearts</i> = a 1621 work (John Taylor's <i>Taylor's motto Et habeo, et careo, et curo</i>) suggests that certain personalities may have been associated with each of the kings of a deck of cards: the <i>king of hearts</i> was beloved.
46	of hearts! The Cornish <u>blades</u> are men of <u>mettle</u> ; have	46: <i>blades</i> = ie. swords, and by extension the men wielding them. <i>mettle</i> = a common play on words with <i>metal</i> .
	proclaimed, through <u>Bodmin</u> and the whole county, my	= a town in Cornwall, through which Warbeck's army will march on its way to Exeter.
48	sweet prince Monarch of England: four thousand <u>tall</u> <u>yeomen</u> , with bow and sword, already vow to live and	= valiant. = respectable commoners serving as foot-soldiers. ¹
50	die at the foot of King Richard.	
52	Enter Astley.	
54	<i>Ast.</i> The mayor, our fellow-counsellor, is servant for an emperor. Exeter is appointed for the rendezvous,	ie. John a-Water.town about 60 miles east of Bodmin, located on the way to London.
56	and nothing wants to victory but courage and resolution.	56: has Astley humorously misspoken? he just said that "the only thing missing from our side to ensure victory is courage and determination."
ļ		l l

	Sigillatum et datum decimo Septembris, anno regni	57-58: "Signed and dated the 10th of September, in the first year of the reign of our king, etc., it is confirmed."
58	regis primo, et cetera; confirmatum est. All's cocksure.	58-59: <i>All's cocksure</i> = ie. "our plan is foolproof." Notice how Astley immediately follows up his impressive Latin with the humorously slangy <i>All's cock-sure</i> .
60	Warb. To Exeter! to Exeter, march on!	= Warbeck and his army of more than 6000 did indeed march on to Exeter.
62	Commend us to our people: we in person Will lend them <u>double spirits</u> ; tell them so.	= an extra dose of courage.
64	Sket. and Ast. King Richard, King Richard!	
66 68	[Exeunt Sketon and Astley.]	
70	<i>Warb.</i> A thousand blessings guard our lawful arms! A thousand horrors pierce our enemies' souls!	
	Pale fear <u>unedge</u> their weapons' sharpest points!	= blunt.
72	And when they <u>draw their arrows to the head</u> ,	= ie. draw their arrows as far back as possible prior to re- leasing, so that the arrowhead is aligned between the two ends of the bent bow, as a means to maximize the power of the arrow's flight.
7.4	Numbness shall strike their sinews! Such advantage	
74	Hath Majesty in its pursuit of justice, That on the proppers-up of Truth's old throne	75: "that in those who support the cause of truth" (Pickburn, p. 139). ⁵
76	It both enlightens counsel and gives heart To execution; whiles the throats of traitors	76-77: <i>heartexecution</i> = courage to act.
78	Lie bare before our mercy. – O, divinity	78: <i>Lie bare</i> = ie. exposed to be cut. <i>divinity</i> = reference to the divine nature of kings.
80	Of royal birth! how it strikes dumb the tongues Whose <u>prodigality</u> of breath is bribed By <u>trains</u> to greatness! Princes are but men	79-81: <i>how itgreatness</i> = the divine nature of kings awes into respectful silence those who once flattered so extravagantly, and who, by cunning stratagem, have been won over to those of high rank (Pickburn, p. 140). Warbeck alludes to James' treatment and subsequent abandonment of him during his time in Scotland. **prodigality* = waste or abundance. ** *trains* = treachery or snares. ** *trains to greatness* = Gibson has an entirely different take on this: "great men's crowds of servants" (p. 313). **
82	Distinguished in the fineness of their <u>frailty</u> , Yet not so <u>gross</u> in beauty of the mind;	= body, frame. ² = conspicuously or obviously great or large, ¹ or common. ⁹
84	For there's a fire more sacred purifies	84-85: <i>For there'smixture</i> = metaphorically, "because there exists in princes a fire which purges the worthless matter (ordinary humanity) of its contaminating elements" (Gibson, p. 313). ⁶ <i>dross</i> (line 85) = impure or foreign matter mixed in with a pure substance.
86	The dross of mixture. Herein <u>stands the odds</u> , "Subjects are men on earth, <u>kings</u> men and gods."	= "lies the difference" (Anderson, p. 84). ⁹ = ie. kings are.
88	[Exeunt.]	

END OF ACT IV.

	ACT V.	
	SCENE I.	
	St. Michael's Mount, Cornwall.	Scene I: the opening scene takes place at <i>St. Michael's Mount</i> , a small island off the southern shore of Cornwall, to which one can walk at low-tide.
	Enter Lady Katherine and Jane in riding-suits, with one Servant.	Entering Characters: Warbeck has left <i>Katherine</i> behind with her attendant <i>Jane</i> and one male <i>servant</i> , as the Pretender went riding out with his army to win the throne. Gainsford tells us that Katherine disguised herself as a servant to try to escape the pursuing English, and was planning to leave Cornwall by ship.
1	<i>Kath.</i> It is decreed; and we must yield to Fate,	Francis of the state of the sta
2	Whose angry justice, though it threaten ruin,	
	Contempt, and poverty, is all but <u>trial</u>	= a test.
4	Of a weak woman's <u>constancy</u> in suffering.	= fortitude. ²
_	Here, in a <u>stranger's</u> and an enemy's land,	= foreigner's, ie. England, as opposed to Scotland. = bereft. ⁵
6	Forsaken and <u>unfurnished</u> of all hopes <u>But such as wait on misery</u> , I <u>range</u> ,	7: <i>But suchwait on</i> = ie. "except for those hopes that accompany". **range* = wander (geographically).
8	To meet affliction wheresoe'er I tread.	
	My <u>train</u> and pomp of servants is reduced	= retinue.
10	To one kind gentlewoman and this groom. –	10: ie. "to Jane and one other servant (<i>groom</i>)."
12	Sweet Jane, now whither must we?	= "to where must we go?"
14	Jane. To your ships, Dear lady, and turn home.	
16	Kath. Home! I have none.	
10	Fly thou to Scotland; thou hast friends will weep	= ie. "flee", an imperative.
18	For joy to bid thee welcome; but, O, Jane,	
	My Jane! my friends are desperate of comfort,	= without.
20	As I must be of them: the common charity,	20-22: <i>the commonstate</i> = without any real means to
20	Good people's alms and prayers of the gentle,	survive, Katherine must make do with charity and prayers
22	Is the <u>revénue</u> must support my <u>state</u> .	from her supporters.
22	is the <u>revenue</u> must support my <u>state</u> .	the gentle = persons of high birth. revenue = stressed on its second syllable. state = condition.
	As for my native country, since it once	
24	Saw me a princess in the height of greatness My birth allowed me, here I make a vow:	
26	Scotland shall never see me being fallen	
	Or lessened in my fortunes. Never, Jane,	
28	Never to Scotland more will I return. <u>Could I be England's queen</u> , – a glory, Jane,	28: Katherine actually lived the rest of her life in England. = "if I could be queen of England" – but Katherine never finishes her point.
30	I never fawned on, – yet the king who gave me	= aspired to. ¹ = ie. James, who gave her away in marriage.
32	Hath sent me with my husband from his presence, Delivered us suspected to his nation,	32: ie. James sent Warbeck away under a cloud of suspicion as to his identity. to his nation = either (1) to England, as Warbeck's nation; or (2) by Scotland, James' nation.

34 36	Rendered us spectacles to time and pity; And is it fit I should return to such As only listen after our descent From happiness enjoyed to misery	= ie. Scotland, the Scottish people. 35: "who are eager to hear about our fall." 1,5 = ie. "from the good fortune we used to enjoy".
38	Expected, though uncertain? Never, never! – Alas, why dost thou weep? and that poor creature	= ie. Katherine's male servant.
40	Wipe his wet cheeks too? let me feel alone Extremities, who know to give them harbour;	39-40: <i>let meharbour</i> = ie. "let me alone to be the one to endure the hardships, because I know how to manage them."
42	Nor thou nor he <u>has cause</u> : you may live safely.	= ie. to cry.
44	<i>Jane.</i> There is no safety whiles your dangers, madam, Are every way apparent.	
46 48	Serv. Pardon, lady, I cannot choose but shew my honest heart; You were ever my good lady.	
50	<i>Kath.</i> O, dear souls, Your shares in grief are too-too much!	
52	Enter Lord Dalyell.	
54	Daly. I bring,	
56	Fair princess, news of further sadness yet Than your sweet youth <u>hath been</u> acquainted with.	= ie. "hath been until now".
58 60	<i>Kath.</i> Not more, my lord, than I can welcome: speak it; The worst, the worst I look for.	
		62ff: Dalyell gives a reasonably accurate summary of the actual anticlimactic fate of Warbeck and his army.
62	Daly. All the Cornish At Exeter were by the citizens	62-65: twice Warbeck's army attempted to storm Exeter, but were driven off by its citizens, with the help of the <i>Earl of</i>
64	Repulsed, encountered by the <u>Earl of Devonshire</u> And other worthy gentlemen of the country.	Devonshire, Edward Courtenay (d. 1509). The Courtenays had always supported the Lancastrians. Edward had fought with Henry at Bosworth, and been raised an earl as a reward for his support. His grandson Henry, however, was beheaded in 1538 for conspiring to overthrow Henry VIII.
66	Your husband marched to Taunton, and was there	= abandoning Exeter on the approach of an army led by the Lord Chamberlain Dawbney, Warbeck's army, now numbering about 8000, moved on to Taunton, about 40 miles north-east of Exeter.
68	Affronted by King Henry's chamberlain; The king himself in person with his army	= confronted.
70	Advancing nearer, to renew the fight On all occasions: but the night before	
72	The <u>battles</u> were to join, your husband privately, Accompanied with some few <u>horse</u> , departed From out the camp, and <u>posted</u> none knows whither.	= armies. ⁵ = cavalry. 73: <i>posted</i> = rode.

74		Warbeck, having finally, after all these years, reached his opportunity to fight for the crown, abandoned his army, fleeing with 60 horsemen.
76	<i>Kath.</i> Fled without battle given?	
78	<i>Daly.</i> Fled, but followed By Dawbney; all <u>his parties</u> left to taste	= Warbeck's supporters or followers (except the cavalry
80	King Henry's mercy, – for to that they yielded, – Victorious without bloodshed.	who fled with him).
82	Kath. O, my sorrows!	02 04 ICL d
84	If both our lives had proved the sacrifice To Henry's tyranny, we had fall'n like princes, And robbed him of the glory of his pride.	83-84: <i>If bothtyranny</i> = ie. had both Warbeck and herself died at Henry's hands.
86		
88	<i>Daly.</i> Impute it not to faintness or to weakness Of noble courage, lady, but to foresight; For by some secret friend he had intelligence	89-90: Bacon refers to a rumour that Warbeck had been
90	Of being bought and sold by his base followers. Worse yet remains untold.	betrayed, but he himself believed Warbeck ran away out of fear.
92	<i>Kath.</i> No, no, it cannot.	
94	, ,	
96	Daly. I fear y[ou] are betrayed: the Earl of Oxford Runs hot in your pursuit.	
98	Kath. 'A shall not need;	98: "Oxford need not hurry to find me."
100	We'll run as hot in resolution gladly To make the earl our jailor.	
102	Jane. Madam, madam, They come, they come!	
104 106	Enter Earl of Oxford with his Followers.	
108	Daly. Keep back! or he who dares Rudely to violate the law of honour	107-9: Dalyell draws his sword to face the intruders.
110	Runs on my sword.	
	<i>Kath.</i> Most noble sir, forbear. –	
112	What reason draws you hither, gentlemen? Whom seek 'ee?	
114	Oxf. All stand off! – With favour, lady,	= Oxford commands his retinue, who are no doubt squaring
116	From Henry, England's king, I would present	off against Dalyell with their own swords drawn, to back off.
118	Unto the beauteous princess, Katherine Gordon, The <u>tender</u> of a gracious <u>entertainment</u> .	= offer. = welcome.
120	Kath. We are that princess, whom your master-king	= Katherine assumes to employ the royal "we".
122	Pursues with reaching arms to draw into His power: let him use his tyranny, We shall not be his subject.	
124	•	
126	Oxf. My commission Extends no further, excellentest lady,	

128	Than to a service; 'tis King Henry's pleasure That you, and all that have relation t'ee, Be guarded as becomes your birth and greatness;	127-9: 'tis Kinggreatness = Oxford assures Katherine that she and her dependents will be treated well, as befits her rank.
130	For, rest assured, sweet princess, that not <u>aught</u>	130-1: <i>not aughtdisturbance</i> = no harm will come to
132	Of what you do call yours shall find disturbance, Or any welcome other than what suits	anyone, or anything (<i>aught</i>), connected to Katherine.
134	Your high <u>condition</u> .	= status, rank.
136	<i>Kath.</i> By what title, sir, May I acknowledge you?	
138	Oxf. Your servant, lady,	
140	Descended from the line of Oxford's earls, Inherits what his ancestors before him Were owners of.	
142		
144	Kath. Your king is herein royal, That by a peer so ancient in desert As well as blood commands us to his presence.	= merit, deserving.
146	•	
148	Oxf. Invites 'ee, princess, not commands.	
150	Your own phrase as you list: to your protection Both I and mine submit.	= please.= word, ie. <i>invites</i> instead of <i>commands</i>. = desire, wish.
152		
154	A nobleman whom fame hath bravely spoken.	= ie. Dalyell. = public report has spoken well of. ⁵
156	To him the king my master bad me say How willingly he courts his friendship; far	156-8: <i>farhope for</i> = Henry, ever tactful, invites Dalyell
158	From an enforcement, more than what in terms Of courtesy so great a prince may hope for.	to be his friend, but will not force him to accept the offer.
160	Daly. My name is Dalyell.	
162	Oxf. 'Tis a name hath won	
164	Both thanks and wonder from report, my lord: The court of England emulates your merit,	= desires to match, out of admiration. ¹
166	And covets to embrace 'ee.	
	Daly. I must wait on	
168	The princess in her fortunes.	
170	Oxf. Will you please, Great lady, to set forward?	
172	•	
174	Kath. Being driven By fate, it were in vain to strive with Heaven.	
176	[Exeunt.]	
	ACT V, SCENE II.	
	Salisbury.	Scene II: Henry had indicated above at Act IV.iv.136-8 that

		he planned to travel to Salisbury to meet up with the royal army.
	Enter King Henry, Earl of Surrey, Urswick, and a guard of Soldiers.	
1 2	<i>K. Hen.</i> The counterfeit, King Perkin, is escaped: – Escape[d]! so let him; he is <u>hedged</u> too <u>fast</u> Within the <u>circuit</u> of our English <u>pale</u>	= surrounded. = securely. = compass or extent. ¹ = domain. ¹
4	To steal out of our ports, or leap the walls Which guard our land; the seas are rough and wider	- compass of extent domain.
6	Than his weak arms can <u>tug with</u> . – Surrey, henceforth	= ie. struggle against: the image is of Warbeck trying futilely to escape England by rowboat.
8	Your king may reign in quiet; turmoils past, Like some unquiet dream, have rather busied Our <u>fancy</u> than <u>affrighted rest of state</u> . —	= imagination. = frightened the tranquility of the nation. ⁶
10	But, Surrey, why, in <u>articling</u> a peace	10-13: Henry wonders why Surrey, when he was negotiating
12 14	With James of Scotland, was not restitution Of losses which our subjects did sustain By the Scotch <u>inroads</u> questioned?	(articling) ¹ for peace with James, failed to include a reparations requirement for all the damage inflicted by the Scots on English property. Dyce suggests that this is consistent with Ford's portrayal of Henry as a bit on the cheap side. See, e.g., Henry's speech at Act IV.iv.84f. inroads = incursions. ¹
	Sur. Both demanded	15-19: Surrey claims he did introduce such a demand, which
16	And urged, my lord; to which the king replied, In modest merriment, but smiling earnest,	James successfully parried.
18	How that our master Henry was much abler To bear the <u>detriments</u> than he repay them.	= damages. ¹
20	K. Hen. The young man, I believe, spake honest truth;	21: <i>The young man</i> = James was 24 at this time.
22	'A <u>studies</u> to be wise <u>betimes</u> . – Has, Urswick,	 spake = ie. spoke, a common alternate form. endeavors. = in good time, or while he is young.
	Sir Rice ap Thomas, and Lord Brook our steward,	= a supporter of Henry's since Bosworth; Pickburn notes that Thomas was mentioned by Shakespeare in <i>Richard III</i> (Act IV.v.12) as an ally of Richmond's.
24	Returned the Western gentlemen full thanks	= ie. those nobles who fought against Warbeck. = proved. ¹
26	From us for their <u>tried</u> loyalties?	= proved.
28	Urs. They have; Which, as if health and life had reigned amongst 'em,	
30	With open hearts they joyfully received.	
30		31-35 (below): Young Buckinghamforget = Henry praises Edward Stafford, 3rd Duke of Buckingham (1478-1521). Edward was five when his father, Henry, 2nd Duke of Buckingham, was executed by Richard III, as portrayed in Shakespeare's play. His family's lands were returned to him when Henry took the throne. Edward was a captain in the royal army that chased after Warbeck. A powerful and

wealthy lord, Buckingham played important roles in the administrations of both Henry VII and especially Henry VIII. Eventually, the latter Henry became suspicious of Buckingham's possible royal ambitions, as he was a descendent of Edward III, and had him tried and executed in 1521. The trial was unfair, as Buckingham was given no chance to

		cross-examine his accusers, and it is likely that the king had made up his mind ahead of time that he must die. Buckingham's feud with Cardinal Wolsey, and his betrayal and conviction, are central to the early scenes of Shakespeare's Henry VIII.
32	<i>K. Hen.</i> Young Buckingham is a fair-natured prince, Lovely in hopes, and worthy of his father;	= "of great promise" (Anderson, p. 89). 9 = see the note above.
34	Attended by an hundred knights and squires Of special name he tendered humble service, Which we must ne'er forget: and Devonshire's wounds,	= distinguished. ⁹ = Gainsford notes that Devonshire had been struck in the arm by an arrow.
36	Though slight, shall find sound cure in our respect.	36: <i>sound cure</i> = ie. metaphor for "appropriate reward". ' <i>respect</i> = favour or esteem. ^{6,9}
38	Enter Lord Dawbney with a Guard, leading in Perkin Warbeck, Heron, John A-Water,	Entering Characters: Perkin Warbeck has finally been captured, along with his advisors.
40	Astley, and Sketon, chained.	Warbeck surrendered on 4 October 1497, only 27 days after he had arrived in Cornwall.
42	<i>Dawb.</i> Life to the king, and safety <u>fix</u> his throne! I here present you, royal sir, a <u>shadow</u>	= make secure. ⁹ = insubstantial image or imitation. ¹
44	Of majesty, but in effect a <u>substance</u> <u>Of pity</u> ; a young man, in nothing grown	44-45: <i>substancepity</i> = tangible or genuine object deserving of pity.
46	To ripeness but th' <u>ambition of</u> your mercy, – Perkin, the Christian world's strange wonder.	= hope to gain. ⁵
48 50	K. Hen. Dawbney, We observe no wonder: I behold, 'tis true,	
52	An ornament of nature, fine and polished, A handsome youth indeed, but not <u>admire</u> him. How came he to thy hands?	= wonder or marvel at.
54	Dawb. From sanctuary	55-57: Having left his army with a small company of
56 58	At Bewley, near Southampton; registered, With these few followers, <u>for</u> persons privileged.	cavalry, Warbeck quickly abandoned the horsemen in turn, fleeing with three companions to Beaulieu, an impressive abbey in Hampshire, where he hoped to find safety from arrest. English law recognized certain religious locations as places of sanctuary, where fugitives could find safety and immunity from arrest. *for* (line 57) = as being. 5
60	K. Hen. I must not thank you, sir; you were to blame T' infringe the liberty of houses sacred:	59-61: Henry worries that Dawbney may have violated the rules of sanctuary in forcing the arrest of Warbeck.
62	Dare we be irreligious?	
64	Dawb. Gracious lord, They voluntarily resigned themselves Without compulsion.	64: Warbeck surrendered, trusting Henry's promise to spare his life; Henry was as good as his word.
66	•	Species in the first in the distribution in the first ind
68	K. Hen. So? 'twas very well; 'Twas very, very well. – [To Warbeck] Turn now thine eyes, Young man, upon thyself and thy past actions;	

70	What revels in <u>combustion</u> through our kingdom	= tumult, confusion. ²
72	A frenzy of aspiring youth hath danced, Till, wanting breath, thy feet of pride have slipt	= lacking, out of.
12	To break thy neck!	- facking, out of.
74		
	Warb. But not my heart; my heart	75-76: my heartmount = Warbeck's mounting heart
76	Will mount till every drop of blood be frozen	contrasts nicely with his <i>slipt feet</i> . <i>mount</i> = aspire (to greatness).
	By death's perpetual winter: if the sun	77-80: <i>if the sununiversal</i> = if Warbeck cannot be king,
78	Of majesty be darkened, let the sun	he prefers to die.
	Of life be hid from me in an eclipse	77-88: <i>if the sunHaven</i> = note the extended celestial imagery in this speech, with <i>sun</i> , <i>darkened</i> , <i>eclipse</i> , etc.
80	Lasting and universal. Sir, remember	80-83: <i>Sircourt</i> = in a desperate gamble, Warbeck boldly
	There was a shooting-in of light when Richmond,	reminds Henry of his (the king's) own background as a rebel,
82	Not aiming at a crown, retired, and gladly,	hoping for mercy in Henry's recognition of Warbeck as a
	For comfort to the <u>Duke of Bretaine's court</u> .	kindred spirit. <i>Richmond</i> = ie. Henry's title before he became king.
		Duke of Bretaine's court = Henry had received sub-
		stantial aid from the Duke of Brittany as he was planning to overthrow Richard.
84	Richard, who swayed the sceptre, was reputed	
06	A tyrant then; yet then a dawning glimmered	85-88: <i>yet thenHaven</i> = Henry and his army had landed
86	To some few wandering remnants, promising day When first they ventured on a frightful shore	at <i>Milford Haven</i> in Wales in August 1485, on his way to colliding with King Richard at the Battle of Bosworth.
88	At Milford Haven; –	containg with raing racticate at the Battle of Bosworth.
90	<i>Dawb.</i> Whither speeds his boldness? –	90-91: Dawbney is shocked to see Henry tolerate Warbeck's
0.0	Check his rude tongue, great sir.	addressing him so presumptuously.
92	K Hen O let him range:	= wander, ie. "talk as he pleases".
92	K. Hen. O, let him <u>range</u> :	= wander, ie. "talk as he pleases".
92 94	The player's on the <u>stage</u> still, 'tis his <u>part</u> ;	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious
94	, 	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is
	The player's on the <u>stage</u> still, 'tis his <u>part</u> ;	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing
94 96	The player's on the <u>stage</u> still, 'tis his <u>part</u> ;	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is
94	The player's on the <u>stage</u> still, 'tis his <u>part</u> ; 'A does but act. – What followed? Warb. Bosworth Field; Where, at an instant, to the world's amazement,	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing a <i>part</i> .
94 96 98	The player's on the <u>stage</u> still, 'tis his <u>part</u> ; 'A does but act. – What followed? Warb. Bosworth Field; Where, at an instant, to the world's amazement, A morn to Richmond, and a night to Richard,	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing a <i>part</i> . 99: a final flourish to Warbeck's celestial imagery.
94 96	The player's on the <u>stage</u> still, 'tis his <u>part</u> ; 'A does but act. – What followed? Warb. Bosworth Field; Where, at an instant, to the world's amazement,	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing a <i>part</i> . 99: a final flourish to Warbeck's celestial imagery. = at the same time. ⁶ = "the story (or moral) is the same
94 96 98	The player's on the <u>stage</u> still, 'tis his <u>part</u> ; 'A does but act. – What followed? Warb. Bosworth Field; Where, at an instant, to the world's amazement, A morn to Richmond, and a night to Richard,	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing a <i>part</i> . 99: a final flourish to Warbeck's celestial imagery.
94 96 98 100	The player's on the stage still, 'tis his part; 'A does but act. – What followed? Warb. Bosworth Field; Where, at an instant, to the world's amazement, A morn to Richmond, and a night to Richard, Appeared at once: the tale is soon applied; Fate, which crowned these attempts when least assured,	 94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing a <i>part</i>. 99: a final flourish to Warbeck's celestial imagery. = at the same time.⁶ = "the story (or moral) is the same here". 101: personified <i>Fate</i> helped Henry defeat Richard when such a victory seemed most out of reach.
94 96 98	The player's on the <u>stage</u> still, 'tis his <u>part</u> ; 'A does but act. – What followed? Warb. Bosworth Field; Where, at an instant, to the world's amazement, A morn to Richmond, and a night to Richard, Appeared <u>at once</u> : the tale is soon applied;	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing a <i>part</i> . 99: a final flourish to Warbeck's celestial imagery. = at the same time. ⁶ = "the story (or moral) is the same here". 101: personified <i>Fate</i> helped Henry defeat Richard when such a victory seemed most out of reach. 102: <i>others</i> = ie. such as Warbeck himself.
94 96 98 100	The player's on the stage still, 'tis his part; 'A does but act. – What followed? Warb. Bosworth Field; Where, at an instant, to the world's amazement, A morn to Richmond, and a night to Richard, Appeared at once: the tale is soon applied; Fate, which crowned these attempts when least assured,	 94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing a <i>part</i>. 99: a final flourish to Warbeck's celestial imagery. = at the same time.⁶ = "the story (or moral) is the same here". 101: personified <i>Fate</i> helped Henry defeat Richard when such a victory seemed most out of reach.
94 96 98 100	The player's on the stage still, 'tis his part; 'A does but act. – What followed? Warb. Bosworth Field; Where, at an instant, to the world's amazement, A morn to Richmond, and a night to Richard, Appeared at once: the tale is soon applied; Fate, which crowned these attempts when least assured, Might have befriended others like resolved.	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing a <i>part</i> . 99: a final flourish to Warbeck's celestial imagery. = at the same time. ⁶ = "the story (or moral) is the same here". 101: personified <i>Fate</i> helped Henry defeat Richard when such a victory seemed most out of reach. 102: <i>others</i> = ie. such as Warbeck himself. <i>like resolved</i> = "who were as determined as Richmond had been to gain the crown."
94 96 98 100	The player's on the stage still, 'tis his part; 'A does but act. – What followed? Warb. Bosworth Field; Where, at an instant, to the world's amazement, A morn to Richmond, and a night to Richard, Appeared at once: the tale is soon applied; Fate, which crowned these attempts when least assured, Might have befriended others like resolved. K. Hen. A pretty gallant! Thus your aunt of Burgundy,	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing a <i>part</i> . 99: a final flourish to Warbeck's celestial imagery. = at the same time. ⁶ = "the story (or moral) is the same here". 101: personified <i>Fate</i> helped Henry defeat Richard when such a victory seemed most out of reach. 102: <i>others</i> = ie. such as Warbeck himself. <i>like resolved</i> = "who were as determined as Richmond had been to gain the crown." 104: <i>pretty</i> = clever. ¹
94 96 98 100	The player's on the stage still, 'tis his part; 'A does but act. – What followed? Warb. Bosworth Field; Where, at an instant, to the world's amazement, A morn to Richmond, and a night to Richard, Appeared at once: the tale is soon applied; Fate, which crowned these attempts when least assured, Might have befriended others like resolved.	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing a <i>part</i> . 99: a final flourish to Warbeck's celestial imagery. = at the same time. ⁶ = "the story (or moral) is the same here". 101: personified <i>Fate</i> helped Henry defeat Richard when such a victory seemed most out of reach. 102: <i>others</i> = ie. such as Warbeck himself. <i>like resolved</i> = "who were as determined as Richmond had been to gain the crown."
94 96 98 100	The player's on the stage still, 'tis his part; 'A does but act. – What followed? Warb. Bosworth Field; Where, at an instant, to the world's amazement, A morn to Richmond, and a night to Richard, Appeared at once: the tale is soon applied; Fate, which crowned these attempts when least assured, Might have befriended others like resolved. K. Hen. A pretty gallant! Thus your aunt of Burgundy,	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing a <i>part</i> . 99: a final flourish to Warbeck's celestial imagery. = at the same time. ⁶ = "the story (or moral) is the same here". 101: personified <i>Fate</i> helped Henry defeat Richard when such a victory seemed most out of reach. 102: <i>others</i> = ie. such as Warbeck himself. <i>like resolved</i> = "who were as determined as Richmond had been to gain the crown." 104: <i>pretty</i> = clever. ¹ 104-5: <i>Thus yournephew</i> = ie. "so your 'aunt' Margaret told you!" = memorized; Henry continues his stage metaphor, begun
94 96 98 100 102	The player's on the stage still, 'tis his part; 'A does but act. – What followed? Warb. Bosworth Field; Where, at an instant, to the world's amazement, A morn to Richmond, and a night to Richard, Appeared at once: the tale is soon applied; Fate, which crowned these attempts when least assured, Might have befriended others like resolved. K. Hen. A pretty gallant! Thus your aunt of Burgundy, Your duchess-aunt, informed her nephew; so,	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing a <i>part</i> . 99: a final flourish to Warbeck's celestial imagery. = at the same time. ⁶ = "the story (or moral) is the same here". 101: personified <i>Fate</i> helped Henry defeat Richard when such a victory seemed most out of reach. 102: <i>others</i> = ie. such as Warbeck himself. <i>like resolved</i> = "who were as determined as Richmond had been to gain the crown." 104: <i>pretty</i> = clever. ¹ 104-5: <i>Thus yournephew</i> = ie. "so your 'aunt' Margaret told you!" = memorized; Henry continues his stage metaphor, begun at lines 94-95 above.
94 96 98 100 102	The player's on the stage still, 'tis his part; 'A does but act. – What followed? Warb. Bosworth Field; Where, at an instant, to the world's amazement, A morn to Richmond, and a night to Richard, Appeared at once: the tale is soon applied; Fate, which crowned these attempts when least assured, Might have befriended others like resolved. K. Hen. A pretty gallant! Thus your aunt of Burgundy, Your duchess-aunt, informed her nephew; so,	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing a <i>part</i> . 99: a final flourish to Warbeck's celestial imagery. = at the same time. ⁶ = "the story (or moral) is the same here". 101: personified <i>Fate</i> helped Henry defeat Richard when such a victory seemed most out of reach. 102: <i>others</i> = ie. such as Warbeck himself. <i>like resolved</i> = "who were as determined as Richmond had been to gain the crown." 104: <i>pretty</i> = clever. ¹ 104-5: <i>Thus yournephew</i> = ie. "so your 'aunt' Margaret told you!" = memorized; Henry continues his stage metaphor, begun

108	Till, learnt by heart, 'tis now received for truth.	= ie. Warbeck actually believes what he is saying.
110	Warb. Truth, in her pure simplicity, wants art	110-1: <i>Truthblush on</i> = personified <i>Truth</i> , in her morally unstained sincerity (<i>pure simplicity</i>), lacks the skill or cunning (<i>wants art</i>) to fake shame, ie. why should Warbeck feel embarrassment from asserting what is true?
112 114	To put a feignèd blush on: Scorn wears only Such fashion as <u>commends</u> to gazers' eyes <u>Sad ulcerated novelty</u> , far beneath The sphere of majesty: in such a court	111-4: <i>Scornof majesty</i> = personified <i>Scorn</i> , on the other hand, acts only to draw the attention of those present to unusual spectacles (ie. Warbeck), and, as such, is unworthy of the majesty of a king (ie. Henry). <i>commends</i> = directs attention. ¹
		Sad ulcerated novelty = Warbeck means himself. ulcerated = irritated, like an ulcer. 1
	Wisdom and gravity are <u>proper robes</u> ,	= ie. the more appropriate qualities of kings; Warbeck continues the metaphor of <i>wearing fashion</i> in lines 111-2 above.
116 118	By which the sovereign is best distinguished From <u>zanies</u> to his greatness.	= clownish impersonators. 1,5,9
116	K. Hen. Sirrah, shift	119: <i>Sirrah</i> = Henry, getting irritated, uses this form of address to indicate contempt. shift = exchange.
120	Your <u>antic pageantry</u> , and now appear <u>In your own nature</u> , or you'll taste the danger	= grotesque or bizarre performance, hence, "assumed act". 5 = "as yourself", ie. Warbeck's true identity.
122	Of fooling <u>out of season</u> .	= common expression for "inappropriately".
124	Warb. I expect No less than what severity calls <u>justice</u> ,	124-6: <i>I expectsafety</i> = ie. Warbeck expects to be executed, a punishment he sarcastically describes as being called <i>justice</i> by those who are quick to dole out harsh sentences to eliminate their enemies in the name of preserving the security of the state (<i>safety</i>).
126	And politicians safety; let such beg As feed on alms: but if there can be mercy	126-7: <i>let suchalms</i> = ie. "those who seek alms can beg, but not I."
128	In a <u>protested</u> enemy, then may it	= self-professed or admitted.
130	Descend to these poor creatures, whose engagements, To th' bettering of their fortunes, have incurred	129-131: Descendloss of all = "be granted to these unlucky folks (these poor creatures , referring to his followers) whom I engaged, hoping by my success to improve their fortunes, but instead causing them to lose everything."
132	A loss of all; to them, if any charity Flow from some noble <u>orator</u> , in death I owe the fee of thankfulness.	131-3: <i>to themthankfulness</i> = "if anyone here is willing to speak on their behalves, I will be grateful even in my death." <i>orator</i> = advocate. ⁶
134	K. Hen. So brave!	
136	K. Hen. So brave! What a bold knave is this! – Which of these rebels Has been the Mayor of Cork?	135: "ie. "excellent!" Henry is sarcastic.
138	Dawb. This wise formality. –	139: Dawbney indicates John A-Water.
140	Kneel to the king, 'ee rascals!	
142	[They kneel.]	

144	ı			
148	144	1		
they may err; for I confess, respectively, in taking great parts, the one side prevailing, the other side must go down: herein the point is clear, if the proverb hold, that hanging goes by destiny; that it is to little purpose to say, this thing or that shall be thus or thus; for, as the Fates will have it, so it must be; and who can help it? Dawb. O, blockhead! thou a privy-counsellor? Beg life, and cry aloud, "Heaven save King Henry!" J. a-Wat. Every man knows what is best, as it happens: for my own part, I believe it is true, if I be not deceived, that kings must be kings and subjects subjects; but which is which, you shall pardon me for that: whether we speak or hold our peace, all are mortal; no man knows his end. K. Hen. We trifle time with follies. Her., J. a-Wat., Ast., Sket. Mercy, mercy! To Digby, the lieftenant of the Tower: [They rise.] To Digby, the lieftenant of the Tower: Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition Hath many years distracted. Warb. Noble thoughts Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower, — Our childhood's dreadful nursery! With. Scome, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ce. [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck Her. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ce. [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck Her. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ce. Her. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ce. Her. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ce. Her. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ce. Her. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ce. Her. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ce. Lixit Warbeck 's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy! Hard Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy! Hard Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy! Hard Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy! Hard Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy! Hard Warbeck's followers	146			
150 down: herein the point is clear, if the proverb hold, that hanging goes by destiny. that it is to little purpose to say, this thing or that shall be thus or thus; for, as the Fates will have it, so it must be; and who can help it?	148	• •	= respectfully. ⁶	
say, this thing or that shall be thus or thus; for, as the Fates will have it, so it must be; and who can help it? Dawb. O, blockhead! thou a privy-counsellor? Beg life, and cry aloud, "Heaven save King Henry!" J. a-Wat. Every man knows what is best, as it happens; for my own part, I believe it is true, if I be not deceived, that kings must be kings and subjects subjects; but which is which, you shall pardon me for that: which we think is which, you shall pardon me for that: which we there we speak or hold our peace, all are mortal; no man knows his end. K. Hen. Urswick, command the dukeling and these fellows [They rise.] To Digby, the lieftenant of the Tower: To Digby, the lieftenant of the Tower: Tamts or abuse be suffered to their persons; They shall meet fairer law than they deserve. Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition Hath many years distracted. Warb. Noble thoughts Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower,—Our childhood's dreadful nursery! K. Hen. No more! With. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ee. [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck Issour pleasure no uncivil outrage, They shall meet fairer law than they deserve. Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition Hath many years distracted. Warb. Noble thoughts Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower,—Our childhood's dreadful nursery! K. Hen. No more! 188 Urs. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ee. [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck Town and who in a privy-counsellor? 155: Dawhney is astounded that such an obvious idiot should have served in even a mock-king's inner council. 155: Dawhney is astounded that such an obvious idiot should have served in even a mock-king's inner council. 155: Dawhney is astounded that such an obvious idiot should have served in even a mock-king's inner council. 155: Dawhney is astounded that such an obvious idiot should have served in even a mock-king's inner council. 155: Dawhney is astounded that such an obvious idiot should have served in even a mock-king's inner coun	150	down: herein the point is clear, if the proverb hold, that		
154 Dawb. O, blockhead! thou a privy-counsellor? 156 156 156 156 156 157 158	152	say, this thing or that shall be thus or thus; for, as the		
should have served in even a mock-king's inner council. 158 J. a-Wat. Every man knows what is best, as it happens; for my own part, I believe it is true, if I be not deceived, that kings must be kings and subjects subjects; but which is which, you shall pardon me for that: no man knows his end. 164 K. Hen. We trifle time with follies.	154	•	155: Dawbney is astounded that such an obvious idiot	
for my own part, I believe it is true, if I be not deceived, that kings must be kings and subjects subjects; but which is which, you shall pardon me for that: whether we speak or hold our peace, all are mortal; no man knows his end. K. Hen. We trifle time with follies. Her., J. a-Wat., Ast., Sket. Mercy, mercy! K. Hen. Urswick, command the dukeling and these fellows [They rise.] To Digby. the lieftenant of the Tower: With safety let them be conveyed to London. It is our pleasure no uncivil outrage, Taunts or abuse be suffered to their persons; They shall meet fairer law than they deserve. Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition Hath many years distracted. Warb. Noble thoughts Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower, Our childhood's dreadful nursery! K. Hen. No more! Wrs. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ee. [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck In the which is which, you shall pard subjects subjects; but which is which, is which, you shall pard on the for that: whether we speak or hold our peace, all are mortal; no man knows his end. ### Waste. ### Waste. ### Waste. ### In the Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. ### Contemptuous term for Warbeck, the imitation-duke. ### In the Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. ### In the Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. ### In the Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. ### In the Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. ### In the Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. ### In the Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. ### In the Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. ### In the Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. ### In the Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. ### In the Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself,	156	• •	should have served in even a mock-king's inner council.	
deceived, that kings must be kings and subjects subjects; but which is which, you shall pardon me for that: whether we speak or hold our peace, all are mortal; no man knows his end. K. Hen. We trifle time with follies. Her., J. a-Wat., Ast., Sket. Mercy, mercy! K. Hen. Urswick, command the dukeling and these fellows To Digby. the lieftenant of the Tower: To Digby. the lieftenant of the Tower: 172 With safety let them be conveyed to London. It is our pleasure no uncivil outrage, Taunts or abuse be suffered to their persons; They shall meet fairer law than they deserve. Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition Hath many years distracted. 182 Warb. Noble thoughts Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower, — Our childhood's dreadful nursery! K. Hen. No more! 183 Urs. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ee. [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. 166: a waste. 167: note that Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. 167: note that Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. 167: note that Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. 167: note that Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. 167: note that Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. 168: Levit Marbeck in displayed to be king for mercy. 179: Digby. the lieftenant of the Tower. 179: Digby this is one Sir John Digby, 6 180: Infernant = ie. lieutenant: the f is pronounced: lef- 178: Digby = this is one Sir John Digby, 6 189: Leftenant = ie. lieutenant: the f is pronounced: lef- 178: Digby = this is one Sir John Digby, 6 180: Leftenant = ie. lieutenant: the f is pronounced: lef- 178: Leftenant = ie. lieutenant: the f is pronounced: lef- 179: Digby. the lieftenant of the Tower. 179: Digby this is one Sir John Digby, 6 180: Leftenant = ie. lieutenant: the f is pronounced: lef- 179: Leftenant = ie. lieutenant: the f is pronounced: lef-	158	•		
whether we speak or hold our peace, all are mortal; no man knows his end. K. Hen. We trifle time with follies. Her., J. a-Wat., Ast., Sket. Mercy, mercy! K. Hen. Urswick, command the dukeling and these fellows [They rise.] To Digby, the lieftenant of the Tower: With safety let them be conveyed to London. It is our pleasure no uncivil outrage, Taunts or abuse be suffered to their persons; They shall meet fairer law than they deserve. Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition Hath many years distracted. Warb. Noble thoughts Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower, — Our childhood's dreadful nursery! K. Hen. No more! Wrs. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ee. [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck Exit Urswick with Perk	160	deceived, that kings must be kings and subjects subjects;		
With safety let them be conveyed to London. It is our pleasure no uncivil outrage, Taunts or abuse be suffered to their persons; They shall meet fairer law than they deserve. Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition Hath many years distracted. Warb. Noble thoughts Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower, — Our childhood's dreadful nursery! With Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ee. Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck warste. waste. 167: note that Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. 167: note that Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy.	162	whether we speak or hold our peace, all are mortal;		
Her., J. a-Wat., Ast., Sket. Mercy, mercy! 167: note that Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck himself, beg the king for mercy. = contemptuous term for Warbeck, the imitation-duke.	164		= waste.	
K. Hen. Urswick, command the dukeling and these fellows	166	Her., J. a-Wat., Ast., Sket. Mercy, mercy!		
fellows [They rise.] To Digby, the lieftenant of the Tower: It is our pleasure no uncivil outrage, Taunts or abuse be suffered to their persons; They shall meet fairer law than they deserve. Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition Hath many years distracted. To Digby = this is one Sir John Digby.6 Ileftenant = ie. lieutenant: the f is pronounced: lef- TEN-ant. **Securely. 175-6: despite Henry's orders here, Warbeck was in fact paraded through London and taunted by the curious onlookers. **Securely.* 175-6: despite Henry's orders here, Warbeck was in fact paraded through London and taunted by the curious onlookers. **Securely.* 175-6: despite Henry's orders here, Warbeck was in fact paraded through London and taunted by the curious onlookers. **Securely.* 175-6: despite Henry's orders here, Warbeck was in fact paraded through London and taunted by the curious onlookers. **Securely.* 175-6: despite Henry's orders here, Warbeck was in fact paraded through London and taunted by the curious onlookers. **Securely.* 175-6: despite Henry's orders here, Warbeck was in fact paraded through London and taunted by the curious onlookers. **Securely.* 175-6: despite Hen	168	W Han Urswick command the dukeling and these		
To Digby, the lieftenant of the Tower: To Digby, the lieftenant of the Tower: To Digby, the lieftenant of the Tower: 173: Digby = this is one Sir John Digby. lieftenant = ie. lieutenant: the f is pronounced: lef- TEN-ant. 174 With safety let them be conveyed to London. It is our pleasure no uncivil outrage, Taunts or abuse be suffered to their persons; They shall meet fairer law than they deserve. Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition Hath many years distracted. 180 Warb. Noble thoughts Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower, — Our childhood's dreadful nursery! 182 K. Hen. No more! 184 K. Hen. No more! 186 Urs. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ee. 188 [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck] 189 Lots of time.	170		- contemptuous term for warbeek, the mination-duke.	
To Digby, the lieftenant of the Tower: 173: Digby = this is one Sir John Digby. 6 lieftenant = ie. lieutenant: the f is pronounced: lef-TEN-ant. 174	170	[They rise.]		
With safety let them be conveyed to London. It is our pleasure no uncivil outrage, Taunts or abuse be suffered to their persons; They shall meet fairer law than they deserve. Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition Hath many years distracted. Warb. Noble thoughts Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower, - Our childhood's dreadful nursery! 182-3: the Towernursery = Warbeck not only refuses to confess, but pretentiously "remembers" the scene of his royal childhood. 186 Urs. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ee. 188 [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck] 189 18	172	To <u>Digby</u> , the <u>lieftenant</u> of the Tower:	lieftenant = ie. lieutenant: the f is pronounced: lef -	
It is our pleasure no uncivil outrage, Taunts or abuse be suffered to their persons; They shall meet fairer law than they deserve. Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition Hath many years distracted. Noble thoughts Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower, – Our childhood's dreadful nursery! K. Hen. No more! Wars. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ee. [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck] It is our pleasure no uncivil outrage, 175-6: despite Henry's orders here, Warbeck was in fact paraded through London and taunted by the curious onlookers. 182-aused to become imbalanced. 182-3: the Towernursery = Warbeck not only refuses to confess, but pretentiously "remembers" the scene of his royal childhood. Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck			TEN-ant.	
They shall meet fairer law than they deserve. Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition Hath many years distracted. Warb. Noble thoughts Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower, — Our childhood's dreadful nursery! K. Hen. No more! Wrs. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ee. [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck] Nonlookers. onlookers. 182-3: the Towernursery = Warbeck not only refuses to confess, but pretentiously "remembers" the scene of his royal childhood. ie. lots of time.	174		•	
Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition Hath many years distracted. Warb.	176	•		
Warb. Noble thoughts Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower, — Our childhood's dreadful nursery! K. Hen. No more! Urs. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ee. [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck] [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck] Noble thoughts 182-3: the Towernursery = Warbeck not only refuses to confess, but pretentiously "remembers" the scene of his royal childhood.	178	Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition		
Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower, — Our childhood's dreadful nursery! 184 K. Hen. No more! 186 Urs. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ee. 188 [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck] 182-3: the Towernursery = Warbeck not only refuses to confess, but pretentiously "remembers" the scene of his royal childhood. 180 181 182-3: the Towernursery = Warbeck not only refuses to confess, but pretentiously "remembers" the scene of his royal childhood.	180	• •	= caused to become imbalanced.	
184 K. Hen. No more! 186 Urs. Come, come, you shall have leisure to bethink 'ee. [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck] [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck]	182	Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower, –		
Urs. Come, come, you shall have <u>leisure</u> to bethink 'ee. [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck] = ie. lots of time.	184	•	÷ • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
188 [Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck]	186		= ie. lots of time.	
	188	·		
	190	-		

192	K. Hen. Was ever so much impudence in forgery? The custom, sure, of being styled a king	= was there ever. = deceit, fraud. 1 = called.
194	Hath fastened in his thought that he is such; But we shall teach the lad another language:	194: Warbeck actually believes he is the Duke of York.
196	'Tis good we have him <u>fast</u> .	= securely.
198	<i>Dawb.</i> The hangman's <u>physic</u> Will <u>purge</u> this saucy <u>humour</u> .	198-9: a nice medical metaphor, with <i>physic</i> (medicine), <i>purge</i> and <i>humour</i> : while <i>humour</i> could mean inclination
200	win <u>purge</u> this saucy <u>numour</u> .	or eccentricity, it also alludes to any one of the four fluids (humours) in the human body: blood, phlegm, yellow bile and black bile; certain sicknesses were caused by possessing an excess of one or more of the humours – hence the need to <i>purge</i> them.
	K. Hen. Very likely;	
202	Yet we could <u>temper</u> mercy with <u>extremity</u> , Being not too far provoked.	202-3: once again, Henry reveals an inclination to be merciful, suggesting he is willing to mix (<i>temper</i>) mercy with
204	[Enter Earl of Oxford, Lady Katherine in her richest	severity (<i>extremity</i>).
206	attire, Lord Dalyell, Jane, and Attendants.]	
208	Oxf. Great sir, be pleased,	
210	With your accustomed grace to entertain The Princess Katherine Gordon.	
212	K. Hen. Oxford, herein	212-7: Henry mildly scolds Oxford for suggesting he needs reminding to treat Katherine gracefully.
214	We must <u>beshrew</u> thy knowledge of our nature. A lady of her birth and virtues could not Have found us so unfurnished of good manners	= censure. ²
216	As not, on notice given, to have met her Halfway in point of love. –	
	[To Katherine] Excuse, fair cousin,	217: <i>fair cousin</i> = assuming Katherine was truly the grand-daughter of James I, she and Henry would have been very distantly related, as they shared an ancestor in John Beaufort, son of John of Gaunt, who was a son of Edward III. Henry also likely uses <i>cousin</i> as a signal of affection and kindness. ¹
218	The oversight: –	212-8: Bacon states that Henry received Katherine "not only with compassion, but with affection; pity giving more
220	[Katherine offers to kneel.]	impression to her excellent beauty" (p. 184).
222	O, fie! you may not kneel;	= must.
224	Tis most unfitting: first, <u>vouchsafe</u> this welcome, A welcome to your own; for you shall find us	= deign to accept. ¹
226	But guardian to your fortune and your honours.	
226 228	<i>Kath.</i> My fortunes and mine honours are weak <u>champions</u> , As both are now befriended, sir: however,	= a <i>champion</i> is one who fights on behalf of another. ¹
	Both bow before your clemency.	
230	K. Hen. Our arms	231-2: Henry likely embraces Katherine, assuring her that in
232	Shall circle them from malice. – A sweet lady!	encircling her with his arms, he will protect her <i>honour</i> and <i>fortunes</i> (lines 225 and 227) from those who may wish to harm her.
	Beauty incomparable! – here lives majesty	

234	At league with love.		= allied or combined with.
236	Kath.	O, sir, I have a husband. –	= Katherine tries to tactfully probe to determine what Henry has in store for Warbeck.
238	K. Hen. We'll pro-	ve your father, husband, friend, and	238: note how Henry, both here and again at line 248 below, intently ignores Katherine's query about Warbeck's fate.
	Prove what you wi	sh to grant us. – Lords, be careful	239-242: <i>Lordslife</i> = Henry orders that a stipend be given to Katherine.
240	A <u>patent</u> presently	be drawn for issuing	= a document granting a privilege or right. ¹
	A thousand pounds	s from our exchequer yearly	241: Bacon tells us only that Henry allowed Katherine an "honourable allowance" which "she enjoyed both during the king's life, and many years after" (p. 184). According to the Bank of England's online inflation calculator, £1000 in 1495 is worth £ 1.1 million today. 14
242		s life. – <u>Our queen</u> shall be nion, our own court your home,	= ie. Henry's wife, Elizabeth of York.
244	Our subjects all yo	The state of the s	238-244: notice how Henry has indirectly let Katherine know she will spend the rest of her life in England. Henry always treated Katherine well, and did indeed grant her a pension, as well as pay her wardrobe expenses.
246	Kath.	But my husband?	gram her a pension, as wen as pay her wararove expenses.
248		scriptions, you are noble Dalyell, uth hath famed a rare observance.	249: whose great loyalty (<i>truth</i>) and seldom-seen or excellent attentive care (<i>rare observance</i>) to Katherine has become famous. ¹
250252		goodness gives addition ted from your ancestry,	250-2: <i>'tis aworthy</i> = Dalyell's innate chivalrous character adds luster to whatever family titles he possesses.
254		Worthier than your praises, I need not glory in.	
256	K. Hen. Embrace	him, lords. –	257-9: Henry's attention quickly returns to Katherine.
258	[To Ka	therine] Whoever calls you mistress	257-8: <i>Whoevercharge</i> = Henry promises to protect all of Katherine's dependents.
260	Mine eyes yet ne'e	r encountered.	<i>is liftedcharge</i> = ie. "is raised so as to be under my special care" (Pickburn, p. 142). ⁵
262	Kath. Of fate! what rests	Cruël misery to hope for?	= remains.
264	K. Hen. To London. – <u>Fair</u>	Forward, lords, , ere long I shall present ye	= vocative term, meaning "beautiful lady".
266	With a glad object.	, – peace, and <u>Huntley's blessing</u> .	266: <i>object</i> = sight. ¹ <i>Huntley's blessing</i> = Henry will surprise Katherine with the presence of her father, Lord Huntley, whom James, we remember, had sent to England to conclude a peace with Henry.
268		[Exeunt.]	,
	ACT V, SCEN	<u>IE III.</u>	

Tyburn. **Scene III:** *Tyburn* = a town located on the edge of London; Tyburn was the primary site of executions by hanging. 15 The play, historically, moves forward two years to 1499. Henry had originally treated Warbeck with great leniency, not only sparing his life, but also even letting him live at and move about the king's court with complete freedom (though Henry had him constantly watched). On 9 June 1498, however, Warbeck escaped, but got no further than Syon Abbey, located in what is now West London, where he quickly surrendered. At this point, the narratives of the sources diverge slightly. According to Gainsford, Warbeck was immediately placed in public stocks at Westminster, to be abused by the public; he was then tortured on the rack, which resulted in his not only admitting his crimes, but also writing out a lengthy confession, which he was forced to read aloud in public on multiple occasions. Bacon, however, tells us that after surrendering, Warbeck was exhibited in stocks twice, first at Westminster, then at "the cross in Cheapside", during which he read out his confession. Either way, Henry by now had no choice but to confine Warbeck in the Tower of London for the rest of his life. In 1499, Warbeck tried to bribe his keepers into joining a plot to seize the Tower, unfortunately dragging the Earl of Warwick into his plans. His conspiracy revealed, he was sentenced to die, as was the unfortunate Earl. Enter Constable and Officers, Perkin Warbeck, Entering Characters: Warbeck, unrepentant, is facing Urswick, and Lambert Simnel as a Falconer, punishment for his crimes. An earlier pretender to the followed by the rabble. throne, Lambert Simnel, now serves Henry as falconer. A pair of stocks. 1-12 note how the Constable repeatedly has to warn the mob Const. Make room there! keep off, I require 'ee; and from climbing onto the platform on which the stocks are none come within twelve foot of his majesty's new placed. stocks, upon pain of displeasure. – Bring forward the malefactors. - Friend, you must to this gear, no remedy. = business. = ie. "there is no avoiding it." 5-6: *Open the hole...that hole* = as a rule, each *hole* in a - Open the hole, and in with his legs, just in the middle set of stocks would hold only one leg. Our friends at hole; there, that hole. [Warbeck is put in the stocks.] PilloryHistory.com, however, advise us that Ford seems to have, for some strange reason, invented a new kind of stocks, in which two limbs would go into a single hole – a punishment probably without precedent in the real world; such stocks would be impractical: if a hole is large enough for two limbs, then you could never use it to hold only one limb, as it would be too easy for the victim to "simply remove his or her feet through the oversized holes."7 - Keep off, or I'll commit you all: shall not a man in = imprison.¹ authority be obeyed! – So, so, there; 'tis as it should be: put on the padlock, and give me the key. - Off, I say, keep off!

1

2

4

6

8

10

12	<i>Urs.</i> Yet, Warbeck, clear thy conscience: thou hast tasted	12f: for the first time in the play, a member of the English court (other than Henry) speaks to Warbeck directly; the nobles will, of course, address him using <i>thee</i> , both as would naturally be used when addressing a member of a lower class, but also signaling contempt.
14	King Henry's mercy liberally; the law Has forfeited thy life; an <u>equal</u> jury	13-15: <i>the lawgallows</i> = in an effort to wrap up the play, Ford awkwardly compresses two years' worth of events – a description of Warbeck's escape attempts, his punishment in stocks, and his sentencing and execution – into a single concluding scene. <i>equal</i> = impartial. <i>doomed</i> (line 15) = sentenced.
	Have doomed thee to the gallows; twice most wickedly,	15-19: <i>twiceattempt</i> = see the note at the beginning of this scene.
16	Most desperately, hast thou escaped the Tower, <u>Inveigling to thy party</u> with thy witchcraft	= seducing to join your cause or plot (<i>party</i>). ¹
18	Young Edward Earl of Warwick, son to Clarence, Whose head must pay the price of that attempt;	18-19: Edward, Earl of Warwick: one of the most pathetic characters never to actually appear in a play, Edward's only crime was to be so close to the throne in blood that he was kept in prison his entire adult life. His unfortunate inclusion in Warbeck's plan to take over the Tower led to his sentence of death. Francis Bacon feelingly wrote, "(thus did) this winding ivy of a Plantagenet kill the true tree itself." For the full story of Edward, see the note at Act III.3.95.
20	Poor gentleman, unhappy in his fate,	Juli Story of Edward, see the note at Act III.5.55.
	And ruined by thy cunning! so a mungrel	21: <i>And ruinedcunning</i> = it is because of Warbeck's
22	May pluck the <u>true stag</u> down. Yet, yet, confess	cleverness (<i>cunning</i> , sarcastic) that the earl is doomed.
24	Thy parentage; for yet the king has mercy.	21-22: so a mungreldown = as in Bacon's quote in the note above at lines 18-19, a metaphor is used to distinguish the true royal person (Edward) from the false one (Warbeck). Note the intense imagery of a mongrel (Warbeck) taking down the noble stag (Edward). mungrel = common alternate form of mongrel. 22-23: Yetmercy = Warbeck may still save his life if he confesses his fraud!
	Sim. You would be Dick the Fourth; very likely!	
26	Your <u>pedigree is published</u> ; you are known	= (true) ancestry has been revealed and proclaimed.
28	For Osbeck's son of Tournay, a loose <u>runagate</u> , A <u>landloper</u> ; your father was a Jew,	= wanderer (contemptuous). ¹ = one who roves all over the land. ¹
20	Turned Christian merely to repair his miseries:	27-29: Ford borrowed the terms of opprobrium <i>runagate</i> and <i>landloper</i> from Bacon, as well as the detail that Warbeck's father was a " <i>convert Jew</i> " (p. 114).
30	Where's now your kingship?	warbeek statuer was a <i>convert sew</i> (p. 114).
32	Warb. Baited to my death?	32: "am I to be tormented to my very last moment?" With <i>baited</i> , Warbeck alludes to one of the era's favourite amusements, in which dogs were set upon a chained-up bear or bull.
34	Intolerable cruëlty! I laugh at The Duke of Richmond's practice on my fortunes:	34: <i>The Duke of Richmond's</i> = to the end, Warbeck refuses to acknowledge Henry as the legitimate king. *practice* = intriguing or scheming against. 5,9

26	Possession of a crown ne'er wanted heralds.	35: "the one who actually possesses the crown never lacks for those ready to proclaim him king", ie. people follow a winner, whether he deserves it or not.
36	Sim. You will not know who I am?	37: ie. "you do not recognize me?"
38	Urs. Lambert Simnel,	
40	Your predecessor in a dangerous <u>uproar</u> ;	= insurrection. ¹
42	But, on submission, not <u>alone</u> received To grace, but by the king <u>vouchsafed</u> his service.	41-42: by confessing his deceit, Simnel was not only (<i>alone</i>) admitted into the king's favour, but he was even given (<i>vouchsafed</i>) a job!
44	Sim. I would be Earl of Warwick, toiled and ruffled	44: would be = ie. impersonated; Simnel ironically claimed to be the very man about to be hanged for scheming to escape with Warbeck. toiled = used in a violent manner. Simnel places the responsibility for his rebellion on those who manipulated him. ruffled = stirred up. 1
	Against my master, leaped to catch the moon,	45: <i>my master</i> = ie. Henry, for whom Simnel now works. <i>leaped to catch the moon</i> = metaphor for Simnel's attempt to achieve an impossible goal, one too far above him – the throne of England.
46	<u>Vaunted</u> my name Plantagenet, as you do; An earl, forsooth! whenas in truth I was,	= boasted. = truly (ironic).
48	As you are, a <u>mere</u> rascal: yet his majesty,	= complete, absolute.
	A prince composed of sweetness, – Heaven protect him! –	
50	Forgave me all my villainies, reprieved	
50	The sentence of a shameful end, admitted	= ie. a hanging. = accepted.
52	My <u>surety</u> of obedience to his service, And I am now his falconer; live plenteously,	= guarantee or promise.
54	Eat from the king's purse, and enjoy the sweetness Of liberty and favour; sleep securely:	
56	And is not this, now, better than to <u>buffet</u>	= contend or struggle against. ¹
	The hangman's clutches, or to brave the cordage	= encounter. ¹
58	Of a tough <u>halter</u> which will break your neck? –	= noose.
	So, then, the gallant totters! – preethee, Perkin,	= at this moment, Warbeck may appear to waver in his stubborn attitude or look as if he were about to faint; but <i>totter</i> also means "to swing from a rope". 1,9
60	Let my example lead thee; be no longer	= so far, Simnel, being a lowly menial, has used a respectful
62	A counterfeit; confess, and hope for pardon.	you with Warbeck; but now, perhaps sensing Warbeck's weakness, he switches to the more familiar and contemptuous <i>thee</i> .
64	<i>Warb.</i> For pardon! hold, my heart-strings, whiles contempt Of <u>injuries</u> , in scorn, may bid defiance	= insults. ⁵
66	To this base man's foul language! – Thou poor vermin, How dar'st thou creep so near me? thou an earl!	
	Why, thou enjoy'st as much of happiness	67-68: Simnel's sense of contentment in life corresponds
68	As all the <u>swinge</u> of slight ambition flew at.	inversely with his low level of ambition. 68: literally, "as the impetus (<i>swinge</i>) ⁶ towards which your meager ambition is directed."
		l

70	A dunghill was thy cradle. So a <u>puddle</u> , By virtue of the sunbeams, breathes a <u>vapour</u> T' infect the purer air, which drops again	69-72: <i>So a puddleexhaled it</i> = Warbeck is like the water of a <i>puddle</i> , which, when it evaporates, corrupts the air, until it condenses back into water again.
72	Into the muddy womb that first exhaled it.	 vapour = steam or similar exhalation, usually considered injurious, suggesting something worthless or insubstantial, as Warbeck would consider Simnel to be.¹ 72: note that womb, used to refer to any place from which something originates, is a metaphor within a metaphor, ie. the womb as the puddle as a source of the vapour.
74	Bread and a slavish ease, with some assurance From the base <u>beadle's</u> whip, crowned all thy hopes:	73-74: Warbeck suggests that Simnel, ignominiously, has been satisfied to have his aspirations limited to being well-fed and living an easy life – his ambitions also curbed by an actual or occasional whipping, or at least the threat of such punishment. beadle's = a beadle was a minor officer charged with dispensing punishment.
76	But, sirrah, ran there in thy veins one drop Of such a royal blood as flows in mine,	
	Thou wouldst not change condition, to be second	77-78: "you would not accept any outcome less than be-
78	In England's state, without the crown itself. Coarse creatures are incapable of excellence:	becoming the king."
80	But let the world, as all to whom I am This day a spectacle, to time deliver,	80-85: Warbeck calls on <i>posterity</i> to remember his noble submission to martyrdom rather than confess to something of which he is not guilty.
82	And by tradition fix posterity	= general acceptance established for. ⁹
84	Without <u>another</u> chronicle than truth, How <u>constantly</u> my resolution suffered	= any other. = steadfastly.
0.6	A martyrdom of majesty.	,
86	Sim. He's past	
88	Recovery; <u>a Bedlam</u> cannot cure him.	= an insane asylum; London's Bethlehem Hospital (founded 1247) for the insane was referred to as <i>Bedlam</i> .
90	Urs. Away, inform the king of his behaviour.	1247) for the fisanc was ference to as Beaum .
92	Sim. Perkin, beware the rope! the hangman's coming.	
94	[Exit Simnel.]	
96	Urs. If yet thou hast no pity of thy body,	96-97: Urswick, the cleric, warns Warbeck of the conse-
98	Pity thy soul!	quences (ie. damnation) of dying with a lie on his lips.
100	Enter Lady Katherine, Jane, Lord Dalyell, and Earl Of Oxford.	
102	Jane. Dear lady!	
104	Oxf. Whither will 'ee, Without respect of shame?	104-5: Oxford chides Katherine for dishonouring herself by deigning to visit the common criminal Warbeck. *respect = "considering your".
106	<i>Kath.</i> Forbear me, sir,	= "leave me alone". 1,9
108	And trouble not the current of my duty. –	= disturb. ⁶ = course. ¹
110	[To Warbeck] O, my loved lord! can any scorn be yours In which I have no interest – Some kind hand Lend me assistance, that I may partake	110: <i>In whichinterest</i> = ie. "which I do not share." 110-2: <i>Some kindpenance</i> = Katherine asks to be

112	Th' infliction of this penance. – My life's dearest,	placed in the stocks alongside her husband!
114	Forgive me; I have stayed too long from tendering Attendance on reproach; yet bid me welcome.	113-4: <i>I havereproach</i> = Katherine has kept away from visiting Warbeck in his disgrace (<i>reproach</i>). 1,6
116 118	Warb. Great miracle of constancy! my miseries Were never bankrout of their confidence In worst afflictions, till this; now I feel them.	116: <i>constancy</i> = fidelity, faithfulness. 116-8: <i>my miseriesfeel them</i> = Warbeck never felt that he had really hit bottom until this moment, when his wife appears to share his <i>miseries</i> with him.
120 122 124	Report and thy deserts, thou best of creatures, Might to eternity have stood a pattern For every virtuous wife without this conquest. Thou hast outdone belief; yet may their ruin In after-marriages be never pitied, To whom thy story shall appear a fable!	= ie. "your reputation". = own merits. = an example. 122-4: <i>yet mayfable</i> = "may failed marriages of the future not be pitied for any couple who thinks the story of your devotion to me is a fiction (<i>a fable</i>), ie. future spouses should use Katherine's love as an example to follow; if they do not do so, and their marriages fail, it is their own fault.
126 128 130	Why wouldst thou prove so much unkind to greatness To glorify thy vows by such a servitude? I cannot weep; but trust me, dear, my heart Is <u>liberal of passion</u> . – <u>Harry Richmond</u> , A woman's faith hath robbed thy fame of triumph.	= filled with emotion. = ie. Henry.
132	Oxf. Sirrah, leave-off your juggling, and tie up The devil that ranges in your tongue.	= deceiving. ²
134 136	Urs. Thus witches, Possessed, even [to] their deaths deluded, say They have been wolves and dogs, and sailed in egg-shells	= contemporary literature refers frequently to witches turning themselves into sundry animals, including
138 140	Over the sea, and rid on fiery dragons, Passed in the air more than a thousand miles, All in a night: — the enemy of mankind Is powerful, but false, and falsehood confident.	wolves, dogs, cats and hares. = travelled. ⁶ = ie. Satan. = deceitful.
142	Oxf. Remember, lady, who you are; come from That impudent impostor.	= ie. "you are a noble, and he is nothing". Oxford repeats his admonition to Katherine.
144 146	<i>Kath.</i> You abuse us: For when the holy churchman joined our hands,	146-8: even if Warbeck were an imposter with respect to
148	Our vows were real then; the ceremony Was not in apparition, but in act. –	his claiming to be royalty, his marriage to Katherine is real.
	Be what these people term thee, I am certain	= perhaps the first and only acknowledgement from Katherine that Warbeck might not be who he claims to be.
150	Thou art my husband, no divorce in Heaven Has been <u>sued-out</u> between us; 'tis injustice	= filed for in court. ¹
152 154	For any earthly power to divide us: Or we will live or let us die together. There is a cruël mercy.	= either.
		156-162 (below): briefly, "despite Henry's tyranny, I am still a monarch when it comes to the love and loyalty of my wife." The entire speech by Warbeck is a particularly

		pretty one, honouring the loyal Katherine.
156 158 160	Warb. Spite of tyranny We reign in our affections, blessèd woman! Read in my destiny the wrack of honour; Point out, in my contempt of death, to memory Some miserable happiness; since herein,	= persecution. ⁹ = remembrance, ie. posterity.
162	Even when I fell, I stood enthroned a monarch Of one chaste wife's <u>troth</u> pure and uncorrupted.	= loyalty in marriage. ¹
164	Fair angel of perfection, immortality Shall raise thy name up to an adoration,	64: "shall make you an object of worship" (Anderson, p. 100).9
166 168	Court every <u>rich</u> opinion of <u>true merit</u> , And <u>saint it</u> in the calendar of Virtue, When I am turned into the self-same dust Of which I was first formed.	= valued, high. ⁶ = those whose opinions matter. = enroll as a formally recognized saint. ¹
170	Oxf. The lord ambassador,	
170	Huntley, your father, madam, should 'a look on Your strange subjection in a gaze so public,	172: "your bizarre degrading of yourself in front of all these
174	Would blush on your behalf, and wish his country Unleft for entertainment to such sorrow.	onlookers". 173-4: <i>wish hissorrow</i> = "wish he never left Scotland in order to be saddened by this spectacle."
176	<i>Kath.</i> Why art thou angry, Oxford? I must be More <u>péremptory</u> in my duty. – [<i>To Warbeck</i>] Sir,	= resolute, fixed; peremptory was stressed on its first syllable in this era.
178 180	Impute it not unto immodesty That I presume to press you to a legacy Before we part for ever.	179-180: Katherine asks Warbeck for something to remember him by.
182	Warb. Let it be, then, My heart, the rich remains of all my fortunes.	
184	<i>Kath.</i> Confirm it with a kiss, pray.	
186	Warb. O, with that	
188	I wish to breathe my last! upon thy lips,	
190	Those <u>equal twins of comeliness</u> , I seal The testament of honourable vows:	= typical Elizabethan imagery for lips.
192	[Kisses her.]	
194	Whoever be that man that shall unkiss	194-5: <i>that shallnext</i> = ie. who will replace Warbeck in Katherine's affections. <i>print</i> (line 195) = imprint.
196	This sacred print next, may he prove more <u>thrifty</u> <u>In</u> this world's just applause, <u>not more desertful!</u>	= prosperous. ¹ = ie. in receiving. = perhaps, "if not more deserving than I."
198	<i>Kath.</i> By this sweet pledge of both our souls, I swear	198-200: despite her vow delivered here, Katherine went
200	To die a faithful widow to thy bed; Not to be forced or won: O, never, never!	on to marry and survive two husbands, then married a third time, before herself dying in 1537; but see the note at line 210 below, which explains why she did this.
202	Enter Earls of Surrey, Huntley, and Crawford, and Lord Dawbney.	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
204	ana Lora Dawoney.	

206	<i>Dawb.</i> Free the condemnèd person; quickly free him! What, has 'a yet confessed?	205: ie. meaning only to remove Warbeck from the stocks.
208	[Perkin Warbeck is taken out of the stocks.]	
210	Urs. [To Dawbney] Nothing to purpose; But still he will be king.	210-1: Urswick updates Dawbney on Warbeck's unchanged status.
212		Actually, Warbeck wrote out a lengthy and detailed confession and story of his life after his second arrest. Katherine was said to have been humiliated by the whole thing.
214	Sur. Prepare your journey To a new kingdom, then, unhappy madman, Wilfully foolish! —	= the quarto prints <i>madam</i> here, emended as shown by all editors.
216	[To Huntley] See, my lord ambassador, Your lady daughter will not leave the counterfeit In this disgrace of fate.	
218		"Y u có do cura volta comen co d"
220	Hunt. I never pointed Thy marriage, girl; but yet, being married, Enjoy thy duty to a husband freely.	= "I was not the one who arranged". = perhaps a disyllable.
222	The griefs are mine. I glory in thy constancy; And must not say I wished that I had missed	222-4: <i>I glorypatience</i> = though not a fan of Warbeck, Huntley appreciates Katherine's loyalty to her husband.
224	Some partage in these trials of a patience.	= experiencing a share.
226	<i>Kath.</i> You will forgive me, noble sir?	
228	Hunt. Yes, yes;	
230	In every duty of a wife and daughter I dare not disavow thee. To your husband, — For such you are, sir, — I impart a farewell	
232	Of manly pity; what your life has passed through, The dangers of your end will make apparent;	
234	And I can add, <u>for</u> comfort to your <u>sufferance</u> , No <u>cordial</u> , but <u>the wonder of</u> your <u>frailty</u> ,	= to give some. = suffering. 235: <i>cordial</i> = "restorative or medicine (to cheer you)". ¹ <i>the wonder of</i> = admiration for. <i>frailty</i> = body or person.
236	Which keeps so firm a station. We are parted.	= ie. calm, unperturbed.
238	<i>Warb.</i> We are. A crown of peace <u>renew thy age</u> , Most honourable Huntley! – Worthy Crawford!	= ie. "make you young again".
240	We may embrace; I never thought thee injury.	= ie. wished.
242	<i>Craw.</i> Nor was I ever guilty of neglect Which might procure such thought. I take my leave, sir.	242-3: <i>Nor wasthought</i> = "I never did anything to cause you to wish any harm to me". Gibson suggests that War-
244	<i>Warb.</i> To you, Lord Dalyell, – what? accept a sigh,	beck and Crawford embrace here.
246	Tis hearty and in earnest.	
248	<i>Daly.</i> <u>I want utterance;</u> My silence is my farewell.	= ie. "I am unable to speak."
250	Kath. Oh, oh!	251: Katherine begins to swoon.
252	Jane. Sweet madam,	
254	What do you mean? – [To Dalyell] My lord, your hand.	

256	Describedo	
258	Daly. Dear lady, Be pleased that I may wait 'ee to your lodging.	= attend. ¹
260	[Exeunt Lord Dalyell and Jane, supporting Lady Katherine.]	
262	Enter Sheriff and Officers with	
264	Sketon, Astley, Heron, and John A-Water, with halters about their necks.	
266268	Oxf. Look 'ee; behold your followers, appointed To wait on 'ee in death!	
270	Warb. Why, peers of England,	
272	We'll lead 'em on courageously: - I read	
272274	A triumph over tyranny upon Their <u>several</u> foreheads. – Faint not in the moment Of victory! our ends, and Warwick's head,	= individual.
271	Innocent Warwick's head, – for we are prologue	= having been sentenced in a trial before the Earl of Oxford for conspiracy to depose the king, Edward, Earl of Warwick, was beheaded on Tower-Hill on 28 November 1499.
276	But to his tragedy, – conclude the wonder Of Henry's fears; and then the glorious race	
278	Of fourteen kings, Plantagenets, determines	278: fourteen kings = the 14 Plantagenets began with Henry II and ended with Richard III. determines = concludes. ¹
	In this <u>last issue male</u> ; Heaven be obeyed!	= Edward, the Earl of Warwick, was the last living Plantagenet descended from kings, and his execution relieved Henry once and for all of anxiety over the rise of any further legitimate claimant to the throne.
280	Impoverish time of its amazement, friends, And we will prove as trusty in our <u>payments</u>	= ie. payment of debt to nature, ie. death: a common image of life as having been borrowed from Providence.
282	As prodigal to nature in our debts. Death? pish! 'tis but a sound; a name of air;	of the as having seen softoned from 110 raches.
284	A minute's storm, or not so much: to tumble	284-8: <i>to tumblemanhood</i> = the era's plays pay frequent
286	From bed to bed, be massacred alive By some physicians, for a month or two,	tribute to the inefficacy of doctors: there is nothing worse than dying slowly from some disease or injury as a result of
200	In hope of freedom from a fever's torments,	incompetent doctors who only prolong life without curing the patient, or alleviating the suffering.
288	Might stagger manhood; here the pain is past Ere sensibly 'tis felt. Be men of spirit!	288: stagger manhood = cause manly courage to fail. 288-9: here the painfelt = at least when you are executed, the end is immediate and comes before any pain is felt. Ere sensibly is felt = ie. before it can be felt by the senses.
290	Spurn coward passion! so illustrious mention Shall <u>blaze</u> our names, and <u>style</u> us kings o'er Death.	= proclaim. = call.
292	Dawb. Away, impostor beyond precedent!	= without.
294	[Exeunt Sheriff and Officers with the Prisoners.]	
296	No chronicle records his fellow.	297: there is no one quite like Warbeck recorded anywhere

298		in the history books.
300	Hunt. I have Not thoughts left: 'tis sufficient in such cases Just laws ought to proceed.	
302	Enter King Henry, the Bishop of Durham, and Hialas.	
304	K. Hen. We are resolved.	304 <i>f</i> : Henry addresses Huntley and the Scots.
306	Your business, noble lords, shall find success	= ie. successful resolution.
308	Such as your king impórtunes.	= ie. James. = has sought; stressed on the second syllable.
310	<i>Hunt.</i> You are gracious.	
312	<i>K. Hen.</i> Perkin, we are informed, is <u>armed</u> to die; In that we'll honour him. Our lords shall follow To see the execution; and from hence	= prepared.
314	We gather this fit use, – that public states,	314: <i>We gatheruse</i> = ie. "we learn this lesson."
316	As our particular bodies, <u>taste</u> most good In health when purgèd of corrupted blood.	fit use = doctrinal deduction (a puritanical expression). ³ 314-6: publicblood = nations (public states) ¹ are healthiest when, like living creatures, malignant or harmful internal threats are removed. taste = feel ⁹ or experience. ⁶
318	[Exeunt.]	Postscript: despite having married Henry's daughter Margaret in 1503, James declared war on his southern neighbour in 1513, in response to Henry's invading France, Scotland's traditional ally. James invaded England with an army of more than 30,000 men in the late summer of that year, meeting a smaller English army at Flodden, near the village of Branxton. September 9th, 1513, was one of the most disastrous days in Scottish history: the entire army was destroyed with unknown thousands of casualties. Most of the upper nobility of Scotland was wiped out; this included the death of James himself. James left behind a son, one-year old James V.
	<u>EPILOGUE</u>	
		The Epilogue: note that the Epilogue is written in rhyming couplets.
1	Here has appeared, though in a several fashion,	= diverse forms, 9 or "a mode suitable to each" (Gibson, p. 335).6
2	The threats of majesty, the strength of passion,	ŕ
4	Hopes of an empire, change of fortunes; all What can to theätres of greatness fall,	3-4: <i>allfoundations</i> = ie. everything that can lead to the failure of a cause if it is not backed by strength and legitimacy: an architectural metaphor. <i>theatres</i> = a tri-syllable.
6	Proving their weak foundations. Who will please, Amongst such <u>several sights</u> , to <u>censure</u> these No births <u>abortive</u> , nor a bastard brood, —	5-7: Who willbrood = briefly, "those who will not judge (<i>censure</i>) ⁵ these various scenes (<i>several sights</i>) ⁶ to be deficient"; note how Ford employs such a startling metaphor of a stillborn (<i>abortive</i>) ¹ birth and illegitimacy to describe how displeased critics might describe his play.

8	Shame to a parentage or <u>fosterhood</u> , –	= the rearing up of (another's) child. ¹
10	May warrant by their loves all just excuses, And often find a welcome to the Muses.	9-10: "will assure by their approval all excuses for any failures of the play, and thus be welcome to return to the theatre in the future." Ford is inviting applause from his audience. <i>the Muses</i> = the nine mythological sisters were sponsors and protectors of all the arts.
	FINIS	

Footnotes.

Footnotes in the text correspond as follows:

- 1. Oxford English Dictionary (OED) online.
- 2. Crystal, David and Ben. Shakespeare's Words. London; New York: Penguin, 2002.
- 3. Ellis, Havelock, ed. *The Best Plays of the Old Dramatists: John Ford.* London: Viztelly & Co., 1888.
- 4. Smith, W., ed. *A Dictionary of Greek and Roman Biography and Mythology*. London: John Murray, 1849.
- 5. Pickburn, J.P., and Brereton, J. Le Gay, eds. *Perkin Warbeck by John Ford*. Sydney: George Robertson & Co., 1896.
- 6. Gibson, Colin, ed. *The Selected Plays of John Ford*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. 1986.
- 7. *PilloryHistory.com* Website. *What are stocks and pillories?* Retrieved 7/1/2017: http://www.pilloryhistory.com/What(index).html.
 - 8. The Encyclopedia Britannica. 11th edition. New York: 1911.
- 9. Anderson, Jr., Donald K., ed. *Perkin Warbeck*. Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press, 1965.
- 10. Northern Arizona University Website. Celtic Dress of the 16th C. Retrieved 6/25/2017: https://jan.ucc.nau.edu/~wew/celt-clothing/.
- 11. Dyce, Alexander. *The Works of John Ford*, Vol. II. London: Robson and Son, 1869.
- 12. Halliwell, James O. *A Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words*. London: John Russell Smith, 1878.
- 13. *The Guardian* Website. *Why the princes in the tower are staying six feet under*. Retrieved 7/4/2017. www.theguardian.com/science/2013/feb/05/princes-in-tower-staying-under.
- 14. *Bank of England* Website. *Inflation Calculator*. Retrieved 6/28/2017: http://www.bankof england.co.uk/education/Pages/ resources/inflationtools/calculator/default.aspx.
- 15. Sugden, Edward. *A Topographical Dictionary to the Works of Shakespeare and His Fellow Dramatists*. Manchester: The University Press, 1925.
- 16: Jackson, MacDonald P., and Neill, Michael, eds. *The Selected Plays of John Marston*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1986.
- 17. Dunbar, Sir Archibald. Scottish Kings, a Revised Chronology of Scottish History 1005-1625. Edinburgh: David Douglas, 1906.
- 18. *Park Grand London Hotels* wesite. *The History of Westminster Palace*. Retrieved 1/12/2022: www.parkgrandlondon.com/blog/the-history-of-westminster-palace/.
- 19. *archers.org* Website. *A Short History of the English Longbow*. Retrieved 6/26/2017: www.archers.org/?page id=421.